OASIS 🕅

Reference Architecture Foundation for Service Oriented Architecture Version 1.0

Proposed Edits to Public Review Draft 03

02 November 2012

Specification URIs This version:

I his version:

Previous version:

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03.pdf (Authoritative) soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03.html soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03.doc

Latest version:

N/A

Technical Committee:

OASIS Service Oriented Architecture Reference Model TC

Chair:

Ken Laskey (klaskey@mitre.org), MITRE Corporation

Editors:

Peter Brown (peter@peterfbrown.com), Individual Member Jeff A. Estefan (jeffrey.a.estefan@jpl.nasa.gov), Jet Propulsion Laboratory Ken Laskey (klaskey@mitre.org), MITRE Corporation Francis G. McCabe (fmccabe@gmail.com), Individual Member Danny Thornton (danny.thornton@ngc.com), Northrop Grumman

Related work:

This specification is related to:

 Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture 1.0. 12 October 2006. OASIS Standard. http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/v1.0/soa-rm.html.

Abstract:

This document specifies the OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for Service Oriented Architecture (SOA-RAF). It follows from the concepts and relationships defined in the OASIS Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture as well as work conducted in other organizations. While it remains abstract in nature, the current document describes the foundation upon which specific SOA concrete architectures can be built.

The focus of the SOA-RAF is on an approach to integrating business with the information technology needed to support it. These issues are always present but are all the more important when business integration involves crossing ownership boundaries.

The SOA-RAF follows the recommended practice of describing architecture in terms of models, views, and viewpoints, as prescribed in the ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000 (since deprecated and updated to the now standard ISO/IEC/IEEE 42010-2011).

It has three main views: the *Participation in a SOA Ecosystem* view which focuses on the way that participants are part of a Service Oriented Architecture ecosystem; the *Realization of a SOA Ecosystem* view which addresses the requirements for constructing a SOA-based system in a

02 November 2012

Page 1 of 115

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. SOA ecosystem; and the *Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem* view which focuses on what is meant to own a SOA-based system.

The SOA-RAF is of value to Enterprise Architects, Business and IT Architects as well as CIOs and other senior executives involved in strategic business and IT planning.

Status:

This document was last revised or approved by the OASIS Service Oriented Architecture Reference Model TC on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above.

Technical Committee members should send comments on this specification to the Technical Committee's email list. Others should send comments to the Technical Committee by using the "Send A Comment" button on the Technical Committee's web page at http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/soa-rm/.

For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the Technical Committee web page (http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/soa-rm/ipr.php).

Citation format:

When referencing this specification the following citation format should be used:

[SOA-RAF]

Reference Architecture Foundation for Service Oriented Architecture Version 1.0. 01 August 2012. OASIS Committee Specification Draft 04 / Public Review Draft 03.

Notices

Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published, and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors or assigns.

This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification.

OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

The name "OASIS" is a trademark of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against misleading uses. Please see http://www.oasis-open.org/policies-guidelines/trademark for above guidance.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 3 of 115

Table of Contents

1	Introduction	
	1.1 Context for Reference Architecture for SOA	9
	1.1.1 What is a Reference Architecture?	9
	1.1.2 What is this Reference Architecture?	
	1.1.3 Relationship to the OASIS Reference Model for SOA	10
	1.1.4 Relationship to other Reference Architectures	10
	1.1.5 Expectations set by this Reference Architecture Foundation	10
	1.2 Service Oriented Architecture – An Ecosystems Perspective	
	1.3 Viewpoints, Views and Models	11
	1.3.1 ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000 and ISO/IEC/IEEE 42010:2011	11
	1.3.2 UML Modeling Notation	12
	1.4 SOA-RAF Viewpoints	13
	1.4.1 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	13
	1.4.2 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	13
	1.4.3 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	14
	1.5 Terminology	14
	1.6 References	14
	1.6.1 Normative References	14
	1.6.2 Non-Normative References	15
2	Architectural Goals and Principles	16
	2.1 Goals and Critical Success Factors of the Reference Architecture Foundation	16
	2.1.1 Goals	16
	2.1.2 Critical Success Factors	17
	2.2 Principles of this Reference Architecture Foundation	17
3	Participation in a SOA Ecosystem View	19
	3.1 SOA Ecosystem Model	20
	3.2 Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model	21
	3.2.1 Stakeholders, Participants, Actors and Delegates	23
	3.2.2 Social Structures and Roles	24
	3.2.3 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities	27
	3.2.4 Resource and Ownership	29
	3.2.5 Establishing Execution Context	30
	3.3 Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model	34
	3.3.1 Services Reflecting Business	35
	3.3.2 Activity, Action, and Joint Action	35
	3.3.3 State and Shared State	37
	3.4 Architectural Implications	
	3.4.1 Social structures	
	3.4.2 Resource and Ownership	
	3.4.3 Policies and Contracts	
	3.4.4 Communications as a Means of Mediating Action	
	3.4.5 Semantics	39
	3.4.6 Trust and Risk	39
so	a-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012

Standards Track Work Product

Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

Page 4 of 115

	3.4.7 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities	39
	3.4.8 The Importance of Action	39
4	Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view	40
	4.1 Service Description Model	40
	4.1.1 The Model for Service Description	
	4.1.2 Use of Service Description	
	4.1.3 Relationship to Other Description Models	
	4.1.4 Architectural Implications	
	4.2 Service Visibility Model	
	4.2.1 Visibility to Business	
	4.2.2 Visibility	
	4.2.3 Architectural Implications	
	4.3 Interacting with Services Model	
	4.3.1 Interaction Dependencies	
	4.3.2 Actions and Events	
	4.3.3 Message Exchange	
	4.3.4 Composition of Services	
	4.3.5 Implementing Service Composition	
	4.3.6 Architectural Implications of Interacting with Services	
	4.4 Policies and Contracts Model	
	4.4.1 Policy and Contract Representation	
	4.4.2 Policy and Contract Enforcement	
	4.4.3 Architectural Implications	
5	Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View	
-	5.1 Governance Model	
	5.1.1 Understanding Governance	
	5.1.2 A Generic Model for Governance	
	5.1.3 Governance Applied to SOA	
	5.1.4 Architectural Implications of SOA Governance	
	5.2 Security Model	
	5.2.1 Secure Interaction Concepts	
	5.2.2 Where SOA Security is Different	
	5.2.3 Security Threats	
	5.2.4 Security Responses	
	5.2.5 Access Control	
	5.2.6 Architectural Implications of SOA Security	
	5.3 Management Model	
	5.3.1 Management	
	5.3.2 Management Means and Relationships	
	5.3.3 Management and Governance	
	5.3.4 Management and Contracts	
	5.3.5 Management for Monitoring and Reporting	
	5.3.6 Management for Infrastructure	
	5.3.7 Architectural Implication of SOA Management	
		102
	5.4 SOA Testing Model	

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 5 of 115

5.4.1 Traditional Software Testing as Basis for SOA Testing	
5.4.2 Testing and the SOA Ecosystem	104
5.4.3 Elements of SOA Testing	
5.4.4 Testing SOA Services	
5.4.5 Architectural Implications for SOA Testing	
6 Conformance	
6.1 Conformance Targets	
6.2 Conformance and Architectural Implications	
6.3 Conformance Summary	
Appendix A. Acknowledgements	110
Appendix B. Index of Defined Terms	111
Appendix C. Relationship to other SOA Open Standards	112
C.1 Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture	
C.2 The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: Canonical	
C.3 IEEE Reference Architecture	114
C.4 RM-ODP	114

Table of Figures

Figure 1 - Model elements described in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view	19
Figure 2 - SOA Ecosystem Model	20
Figure 3 - Social Structure Model	22
Figure 4 – Stakeholders, Actors, Participants and Delegates	23
Figure 5 - Social Structures, Roles and Action	25
Figure 6 - Roles in a Service	27
Figure 7 - Cycle of Needs, Requirements, and Fulfillment	
Figure 8 - Resources	29
Figure 9 - Willingness and Trust	31
Figure 10 - Policies, Contracts and Constraints	32
Figure 11 - An Activity, expressed informally as a graph of Actions	
Figure 12 - Activity involving Actions across an ownership boundary	
Figure 13 - Model Elements Described in the Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view	
Figure 14 - General Description	42
Figure 15 - Representation of a Description	43
Figure 16 - Service Description	45
Figure 17 - Service Interface Description	46
Figure 18 - Service Functionality	
Figure 19 - Model for Policies and Contracts as related to Service Participants	48
Figure 20 - Policies and Contracts, Metrics, and Compliance Records	49
Figure 21 - Relationship between Action and Components of Service Description Model	50
Figure 22 - Execution Context	53
Figure 23 - Interaction Description	54
Figure 24 - Visibility to Business	57
Figure 27 - Service Reachability	61
Figure 28 - Interaction dependencies	62
Figure 29 - A 'message' denotes either an action or an event	63
Figure 30 - Fundamental SOA message exchange patterns (MEPs)	64
Figure 31 - Simple model of service composition	66
Figure 32 - Abstract example of a simple business process exposed as a service	67
Figure 33 - Abstract example of a more complex composition that relies on collaboration.	68
Figure 34 - Policies and Contracts	71
Figure 35 - Model Elements Described in the Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View	74
Figure 36 - Motivating Governance	76
Figure 37 - Setting Up Governance	77
Figure 38 - Carrying Out Governance	78
Figure 39 - Ensuring Governance Compliance	79
Figure 40 - Relationship Among Types of Governance	81
Figure 41 - Authorization	
Figure 42 - Management model in SOA ecosystem	
soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012

Standards Track Work Product

Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

Page 7 of 115

Figure 43 - Management Means and Relationships in a SOA ecosystem	97
Figure 44 - Management of the service interaction	99
Figure 45 - SOA Reference Architecture Positioning	.113

02 November 2012 Page 8 of 115

1 Introduction 1

11

12

14

Service Oriented Architecture (SOA) is an architectural paradigm that has gained significant attention 2

within the information technology (IT) and business communities. The SOA ecosystem described in this 3

document bridges the area between business and IT. It is neither wholly IT nor wholly business, but is of 4

5 both worlds. Neither business nor IT completely own, govern and manage this SOA ecosystem. Both sets of concerns must be accommodated for the SOA ecosystem to fulfill its purposes. 6

7 The OASIS Reference Model for SOA [SOA-RM] provides a common language for understanding the important features of SOA but does not address the issues involved in constructing, using or owning a 8 9 SOA-based system. This document focuses on these aspects of SOA.

10 The intended audiences of this document and expected benefits to be realized include non-exhaustively:

- Enterprise Architects will gain a better understanding when planning and designing enterprise systems of the principles that underlie Service Oriented Architecture;
- Standards Architects and Analysts will be able to better position specific specifications in 13 relation to each other in order to support the goals of SOA;
- Decision Makers will be better informed as to the technology and resource implications of 15 commissioning and living with a SOA-based system; in particular, the implications following from 16 multiple ownership domains; and 17
- 18 UsersStakeholders/Developers - will gain a better understanding of what is involved in participating in a SOA-based system. 19

1.1 Context for Reference Architecture for SOA 20

1.1.1 What is a Reference Architecture? 21

A reference architecture models the abstract architectural elements in the domain of interest independent 22

of the technologies, protocols, and products that are used to implement a specific solution for the domain. 23

It differs from a reference model in that a reference model describes the important concepts and 24 25 relationships in the domain focusing on what distinguishes the elements of the domain; a reference

26 architecture elaborates further on the model to show a more complete picture that includes showing what

27 is involved in realizing the modeled entities, while staying independent of any particular solution but

instead applies to a class of solutions. 28

29 It is possible to define reference architectures at many levels of detail or abstraction, and for many

30 different purposes. A reference architecture is not a concrete architecture: i.e., depending on the

requirements being addressed by the reference architecture, it generally will not completely specify all the 31

technologies, components and their relationships in sufficient detail to enable direct implementation. 32

1.1.2 What is this Reference Architecture? 33

There is a continuum of architectures, from the most abstract to the most detailed. As a Committee, we 34

35 have liaised and worked with other groups and organizations working in this space to ensure that our

efforts overlap as little as possible (we look at some of these other works in Appendix C). The result is 36

that this Reference Architecture is an abstract realization of SOA, focusing on the elements and their 37

- 38 relationships needed to enable SOA-based systems to be used, realized and owned while avoiding
- reliance on specific concrete technologies. This positions the work at the more abstract end of the 39
- 40 continuum, and constitutes what is described in [TOGAF v9] as a 'foundation architecture'. It is

nonetheless a reference architecture as it remains solution-independent and is therefore characterized as 41

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 9 of 115 Comment [PFB1]: Issue 312 - 1

¹ By *business* we refer to any activity that people are engaged in. We do not restrict the scope of SOA ecosystems to commercial applications.

- 42 a *Reference Architecture Foundation* because it takes a first principles approach to architectural modeling
- 43 of SOA-based systems.

46

- 44 While requirements are addressed more fully in Section 2, the SOA-RAF makes key assumptions that
- 45 SOA-based systems involve:
 - Use of resources that are distributed across ownership boundaries;
- 47 people and systems interacting with each other, also across ownership boundaries;
- security, management and governance that are similarly distributed across ownership
 boundaries; and
- interaction between people and systems that is primarily through the exchange of messages with
 reliability that is appropriate for the intended uses and purposes.
- 52 Even in apparently homogenous structures, such as within a single organization, different groups and 53 departments nonetheless often have ownership boundaries between them. This reflects organizational
- 54 reality as well as the real motivations and desires of the people running those organizations.
- 55 Such an environment as described above is an *ecosystem* and, specifically in the context of SOA-based
- 56 systems, is a **SOA ecosystem**. This concept of an ecosystem perspective of SOA is elaborated further in 57 Section 1.2.
- 58 This SOA-RAF shows how Service Oriented Architecture fits into the life of users actors and
- 59 stakeholders, how SOA-based systems may be realized effectively, and what is involved in owning and
- 60 managing them. This serves two purposes: to ensure that SOA-based systems take account of the
- 61 specific constraints of a SOA ecosystem, and to allow the audience to focus on the high-level issues
- 62 without becoming over-burdened with details of a particular implementation technology.

63 1.1.3 Relationship to the OASIS Reference Model for SOA

- 64 The OASIS Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture identifies the key characteristics of SOA
- and defines many of the important concepts needed to understand what SOA is and what makes it
- 66 important. The Reference Architecture Foundation takes the Reference Model as its starting point, in 67 particular the vecebulary and definition of important terms and concepts
- 67 particular the vocabulary and definition of important terms and concepts.
- 68 The SOA-RAF goes further in that it shows how SOA-based systems can be realized albeit in an
- abstract way. As noted above, SOA-based systems are better thought of as dynamic systems rather than
- stand-alone software products. Consequently, how they are used and managed is at least as important
- 71 architecturally as how they are constructed.

72 1.1.4 Relationship to other Reference Architectures

- 73 Other SOA reference architectures have emerged in the industry, both from the analyst community and
- the vendor/solution provider community. Some of these reference architectures are quite abstract in
- relation to specific implementation technologies, while others are based on a solution or technology stack.
- 76 Still others use middleware technology such as an Enterprise Service Bus (ESB) as their architectural
- 77 foundation.
- 78 As with the Reference Model, this Reference Architecture is primarily focused on large-scale distributed
- IT systems where the participants may be legally separate entities. It is quite possible for many aspects of this Reference Architecture to be realized on quite different platforms.
- 81 In addition, this Reference Architecture Foundation, as the title illustrates, is intended to provide
- 82 foundational models on which to build other reference architectures and eventual concrete architectures.
- 83 The relationship to several other industry reference architectures for SOA and related SOA open
- 84 standards is described in Appendix C.

85 **1.1.5 Expectations set by this Reference Architecture Foundation**

- 86 This Reference Architecture Foundation is not a complete blueprint for realizing SOA-based systems. Nor
- 87 is it a technology map identifying all the technologies needed to realize SOA-based systems. It does
- identify many of the key aspects and components that will be present in any well designed SOA-based
- 89 system. In order to actually use, construct and manage SOA-based systems, many additional design 90 decisions and technology choices will need to be made.
- 00 decisions and technology choices will need to be made.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 10 of 115 Comment [PFB2]: Issue #312 -

1.2 Service Oriented Architecture – An Ecosystems 91

Perspective 92

111

112 113

114

115

131

132

133

93 Many systems cannot be completely understood by a simple decomposition into parts and subsystems in particular when many autonomous parts of the system are governing interactions. We need also to 94 understand the context within which the system functions and the participants involved in making it 95 96 function. This is the ecosystem. For example, a biological ecosystem is a self-sustaining and dynamic 97 association of plants, animals, and the physical environment in which they live. Understanding an 98 ecosystem often requires a holistic perspective that considers the relationships between the elements of

99 the system and their environment at least as important as the individual parts of the system.

This Reference Architecture Foundation views the SOA architectural paradigm from an ecosystems 100

perspective: whereas a system will be a capability developed to fulfill a defined set of needs, a SOA 101 102 ecosystem is a space in which people, processes and machines act together to deliver those capabilities 103 as services.

104 Viewed as whole, a SOA ecosystem is a network of discrete processes and machines that, together with a community of people, creates, uses, and governs specific services as well as external suppliers of 105 106 resources required by those services.

In a SOA ecosystem there may not be any single person or organization that is really 'in control' or 'in 107 108 charge' of the whole although there are identifiable stakeholders who have influence within the community and control over aspects of the overall system.

109

110 The three key principles that inform our approach to a SOA ecosystem are:

- a SOA is a paradigm for exchange of value between independently acting participants;
 - participants (and stakeholders in general) have legitimate claims to ownership of resources that are made available within the SOA ecosystem; and
 - the behavior and performance of the participants are subject to rules of engagement which are captured in a series of policies and contracts.

1.3 Viewpoints, Views and Models 116

1.3.1 ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000 and ISO/IEC/IEEE 42010:2011 117

The SOA-RAF uses and follows the original IEEE "Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of 118 Software-Intensive Systems" [ANSI/IEEE 1471] (updated as a full standard, albeit deprecated - see 119 below – and referenced as ISO/IEC 42010-2007). That document has in turn been superseded by 120 ISO/IEC/IEEE 42010:2011 [ISO/IEC 42010]. Although the more recent standard slightly modifies some of 121 its original definitions and introduces new material, the original [ANSI/IEEE 1471] standard is used and 122 123 referenced here, 124 An architectural description conforming to this standard must include the following six (6) elements: 1. Architectural description identification, version, and overview information 125 126 Identification of the system stakeholders and their concerns judged to be relevant to the 2 127 architecture Specifications of each viewpoint that has been selected to organize the representation of the 128 3. 129 architecture and the rationale for those selections

130 4. One or more architectural views

A record of all known inconsistencies among the architectural description's required constituents 5.

- A rationale for selection of the architecture (in particular, showing how the architecture supports 6. the identified stakeholders' concerns).
- The standard defines the following terms²: 134

Comment [PFB4]: Issue #319

Comment [PFB3]: Issue #319

² See http://www.iso-architecture.org/42010/cm/ http://www.iso-architecture.org/ieee-1471/cm/cm 1471-2000.html-for a diagram of the updated standard's Conceptual Framework

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 11 of 115

135 Architecture

136The fundamental organization of a system embodied in its components, their relationships to137each other, and to the environment, and the principles guiding its design and evolution.

138 Architectural Description

139 A collection of products that document the architecture.

140 System

141

A collection of components organized to accomplish a specific function or set of functions.

142 System Stakeholder

- A system stakeholder is an individual, team, or organization (or classes thereof) with interests in,
 or concerns relative to, a system.
- 145 A stakeholder's concern should not be confused with either a need or a formal requirement. A concern,
- 146 as understood here, is an area or topic of interest. Within that concern, system stakeholders may have
- 147 many different requirements. In other words, something that is of interest or importance is not the same 148 as something that is obligatory or of necessity **[TOGAF v9]**.

149 When describing architectures, it is important to identify stakeholder concerns and associate them with

- viewpoints to insure that those concerns are addressed in some manner by the models that comprise the
- 151 views on the architecture. The standard defines views and viewpoints as follows:
- 152 View

153

A representation of the whole system from the perspective of a related set of concerns.

154 Viewpoint

155 A specification of the conventions for constructing and using a view. A pattern or template from 156 which to develop individual views by establishing the purposes and audience for a view and the 157 techniques for its creation and analysis.

In other words, a view is what the stakeholders see whereas the viewpoint defines the perspective from which the view is taken and the methods for, and constraints upon, modeling that view.

160 It is important to note that viewpoints are independent of a particular system (or solutions). In this way,

- 161 the architect can select a set of candidate viewpoints first, or create new viewpoints, and then use those
- 162 viewpoints to construct specific views that will be used to organize the architectural description. A view,

163 on the other hand, is specific to a particular system. Therefore, the practice of creating an architectural

- 164 description involves first selecting the viewpoints and then using those viewpoints to construct specific
- views for a particular system or subsystem. Note that the standard requires that each view corresponds to exactly one viewpoint. This helps maintain consistency among architectural views which is a normative
- 167 requirement of the standard.
- 168 A view is comprised of one or more architectural models, where model is defined as:

169 Model

- 170 An abstraction or representation of some aspect of a thing (in this case, a system)
- 171 All architectural models used in a particular view are developed using the methods established by the
- 172 architectural viewpoint associated with that view. An architectural model may participate in more than one
- 173 view but a view must conform to a single viewpoint.

174 1.3.2 UML Modeling Notation

- 175 An open standard modeling language is used to help visualize structural and behavioral architectural
- 176 concepts. Although many architecture description languages exist, we have adopted the Unified Modeling
- Language[™] 2 (UML[®] 2) [UML 2] as the main viewpoint modeling language. Normative UML is used
- 178 unless otherwise stated but it should be noted that it can only partially describe the concepts in each
- 179 model it is important to read the text in order to gain a more complete understanding of the concepts
- 180 being described in each section.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 12 of 115 181 The UML presented should not be treated blindly or automatically: the models are intended to formalize

182 the concepts and relationships defined and described in the text but the nature of the RAF means that it

183 still concerns an abstract layer rather than an implementable layer.

184 **1.4 SOA-RAF Viewpoints**

185 The SOA-RAF specifies three views (described in detail in Sections 3, 4, and 5) that conform to three

186 viewpoints: Participation in a SOA Ecosystem, Realization of a SOA Ecosystem, and Ownership in a SOA

187 *Ecosystem*. There is a one-to-one correspondence between viewpoints and views (see Table 1).

	Viewpoint			
Viewpoint Element	Participation in a SOA Ecosystem	Realization of a SOA Ecosystem	Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem	
Main concepts covered	Captures what is meant for people to participate in a SOA ecosystem.	Captures what is meant to realize a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem.	Captures what is meant to own a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem	
Stakeholders addressed	All participants in the SOA ecosystem	Those involved in the design, development and deployment of SOA-based systems	Those involved in governing, managing, securing, and testing SOA-based systems	
Concerns addressed	Understanding ecosystem constraints and contexts in which business can be conducted predictably and effectively.	Effective construction of SOA-based systems.	Processes to ensure governance, management, security, and testing of SOA- based systems.	
Modeling Techniques used	UML class diagrams	UML class, sequence, component, activity, communication, and composite structure diagrams	UML class and communication diagrams	

188 189 Table 1 - Viewpoint specifications for the OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for

SOA

190 1.4.1 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint

191 This viewpoint captures a SOA ecosystem as an environment for people to conduct their business. We do 192 not limit the applicability of such an ecosystem to commercial and enterprise systems. We use the term

business to include any transactional activity between multiple-users participants.

All stakeholders in the ecosystem have concerns addressed by this viewpoint. The primary concern for people is to ensure that they can conduct their business effectively and safely in accordance with the

196 SOA paradigm. The primary concern of decision makers is the relationships between people and

197 organizations using systems for which they, as decision makers, are responsible but which they may not 198 entirely own, and for which they may not own all of the components of the system.

- 199 Given SOA's value in allowing people to access, manage and provide services across, we must explicitly 200 identify those boundaries and the implications of crossing them.

201 **1.4.2 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint**

This viewpoint focuses on the infrastructure elements that are needed to support the construction of SOAbased systems. From this viewpoint, we are concerned with the application of well-understood

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 13 of 115 Comment [PFB5]: Issue #312 - 3

204 technologies available to system architects to realize the SOA vision of managing systems and services that cross ownership boundaries. 205

206 The stakeholders are essentially anyone involved in designing, constructing and deploying a SOA-based 207 system.

1.4.3 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint 208

- 209 This viewpoint addresses the concerns involved in owning and managing SOA-based systems within the
- SOA ecosystem. Many of these concerns are not easily addressed by automation; instead, they often 210
- 211 involve people-oriented processes such as governance bodies.
- 212 Owning a SOA-based system implies being able to manage an evolving system. It involves playing an
- 213 active role in a wider ecosystem. This viewpoint is concerned with how systems are managed effectively,
- how decisions are made and promulgated to the required end points; how to ensure that people may use 214
- 215 the system effectively; and how the system can be protected against, and recover from consequences of, malicious intent. 216

1.5 Terminology 217

- The keywords "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED" (and by extension, "REQUIRES"), "SHALL", "SHALL 218
- NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are 219 220 to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].
- 221
- References are surrounded with [square brackets and are in bold text].
- 222 The terms "SOA-RAF", "this Reference Architecture" and "Reference Architecture Foundation" refer to
- this document, while "the Reference Model" and "SOA-RM" refer to the OASIS Reference Model for 223
- Service Oriented Architecture. [SOA-RM]. 224

225 Usage of Terms

- 226 Certain terms are used in this document (in sections 3 to 6) to denote concepts that are formally defined
- here and intended to be used with the specific meanings indicated. Where mention is first made of a 227
- 228 formally defined concept, or the term is used within the definition of another concept, we use a **bold font**.
- When this occurrence appears in the text substantially in advance of the formal definition, it is also 229
- 230 hyperlinked to the definition in the body of the text. A list of all such terms is included in the Index of
- 231 Terms at Appendix B.

1.6 References 232

1.6.1 Normative References 233

234 235 236	[ANSI/IEEE 1471]	<i>IEEE Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of Software-Intensive Systems</i> , American National Standards Institute/Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers, September 21, 2000.
237 238 239 240	[ISO/IEC 10746-2]	Information Technology – Open Distributed Processing – Reference Model: Foundations, International Organization for Standardization and International Electromechanical Commission, 1999 (Also published as ITU-T recommendation X.902)
241 242 243 244	[ISO/IEC IS 19793]	Information Technology – Open Distributed Processing – Use of UML for ODP System Specification, International Organization for Standardization and International Electromechanical Commission, 2008 (Also published as ITU-T recommendation X.906).
245 246 247	[ISO/IEC 42010]	-System and software-engineering — Recommended practice for architectural description of software-intensive systems, International Organization for Standardization and International Electrotechnical Commission, July 15, 2007.
248 249	[RFC 2119]	Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, S. Bradner, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997, http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

250 251	[SOA-RM]	Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture 1.0, OASIS Standard, 12 October 2006. http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/v1.0/soa-rm.pdf		
252 253 254	[UML 2]	<i>Unified Modeling Language: Superstructure</i> , Ver. 2.1.1, OMG Adopted Specification, OMG document formal/2007-02-05, Object Management Group, Needham, MA, February 5, 2007.		
255 256 257 258 259	[WSA]	Web Services Architecture, David Booth, et al., W3C Working Group Note, World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) (Massachusetts Institute of Technology, European Research Consortium for Informatics and Mathematics, Keio University), February, 2004. http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/NOTE-ws-arch- 20040211/		
260	1.6.2 Non-Normati	ive References		
261	[DCMI]	Dublin Core Metadata Initiative, http://dublincore.org.		
262	[HOTLE]	SOA Governance – What You Need to Know, Matt Hotle, Gartner, 2010		
263 264	[IEEE 829]	IEEE Standard for Software Test Documentation, Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 16 September 1998		
265 266	[ISO 11179]	Information Technology Metadata registries (MDR), ISO/IEC 11179, http://metadata-standards.org/11179/		
267 268 269	[ISO/IEC 27002]	Information technology Security techniques - Code of practice for information security management, International Organization for Standardization and International Electrotechnical Commission, 2007		
270 271	[ISO/IEC/IEEE 42010]	<u>Systems and software engineering – Architecture description, 1 December</u> 2011.	Comment [PFB6]:	Issue #319,
272 273	[LININGTON]	Building Enterprise Systems with ODP, Peter Linington, Zoran Milosevic, Akira Tanaka, Antonio Vallecillo, Chapman & Hall / CRC, 2012	part	
274 275	[NEWCOMER/LOMOW]	Understanding SOA with Web Services, Eric Newcomer and Greg Lomow, Addison-Wesley: Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2005.		
276 277 278	[SMITH]	Mitigating Risks Associated with Transitive Trust in Service Based Identity Propagation, K. Smith, Information Security Journal: A Global Perspective, 21:2, 71-78, April 2012)		
279 280 281 282	[SOA NAV]	Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture, Heather Kreger and Jeff Estefan (Eds.), Joint Paper, The Open Group, OASIS, and OMG, July 2009. http://www.oasis- open.org/committees/download.php/32911/wp_soa_harmonize_d1.pdf		
283 284	[TOGAF v9]	The Open Group Architecture Framework (TOGAF), Version 9 Enterprise Edition, The Open Group, Doc Number: G091, February 2009.		
285 286 287	[WEILL]	IT Governance: How Top Performers Manage IT Decision Rights for Superior Results, Peter Weill and Jeanne W. Ross, Harvard Business School Press, 2004		

288 2 Architectural Goals and Principles

This section identifies the goals of this Reference Architecture Foundation and the architectural principles
 that underpin it.

291 2.1 Goals and Critical Success Factors of the Reference 292 Architecture Foundation

- 293 There are three principal goals:
 - to show how SOA-based systems can effectively bring participants with needs ('consumers') to interact with participants offering appropriate capabilities as services ('producers');
 - for participants to have a clearly understood level of confidence as they interact using SOA-based systems; and
- 298 3. for SOA-based systems to be scaled for small or large systems as needed.
- 299 There are four factors critical to the achievement of these goals:
- 300 1. Action: an account of participants' action within the ecosystem;
 - Trust: an account of how participants' internal perceptions of the reliability of others guide their behavior (i.e., the trust that participants may or may not have in others)
 - 3. Interaction: an account of how participants can interact with each other; and
- Control: an account of how the management and governance of the entire SOA ecosystem can be arranged.
- 306 These goals and success factors are expanded in the following subsections.

307 2.1.1 Goals

294

295

296

297

301 302

303

308 2.1.1.1 Effectiveness

- A primary purpose of the SOA-RAF is to show how SOA-based systems ensure that participants can use the facilities of the system to meet their needs. This does not imply that every need has a SOA solution,
- 311 but for those needs that can benefit, we look at what is needed to use the SOA paradigm effectively.
- 312 The key factors that govern effectiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken–
- size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken size a close that govern electiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken-
- 314 measurable results.

315 2.1.1.2 Confidence

- 316 SOA-based systems should enable service providers and consumers to conduct their business with the
- 317 appropriate level of confidence in the interaction. Confidence is especially important in situations that are
- high-risk; this includes situations involving multiple ownership domains as well as situations involving the
 use of sensitive resources.
- 320 Confidence has many dimensions: confidence in the successful interactions with other participants,
- 321 confidence in the assessment of trust, as well as confidence that the ecosystem is properly managed.

322 2.1.1.3 Scalability

- 323 The third goal of this reference architecture is scalability. In architectural terms, we determine scalability in
- 324 terms of the smooth growth of complex systems as the number and complexity of services and
- 325 interactions between participants increases. Another measure of scalability is the ease with which
- 326 interactions can cross ownership boundaries.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 16 of 115

2.1.2 Critical Success Factors 327

- A critical success factor (CSF) is a property of the intended system, or a sub-goal that directly supports a 328 goal and there is strong belief that without it the goal is unattainable. CSFs are not necessarily 329
- measurable in themselves. CSFs can be associated with more than one goal. 330
- In many cases, critical success factors are often denoted by adjectives: reliability, trustworthiness, and so 331 332 on. In our analysis of the SOA paradigm, however, it seems more natural to identify four critical concepts
- 333 (nouns) that characterize important aspects of SOA:

334 2.1.2.1 Action

- 335 Participants' principal mode of participation in a SOA ecosystem is action: typically action in the interest of
- 336 achieving some desired real world effect. Understanding how action is related to SOA is thus critical to 337 the paradigm.

338 2.1.2.2 Trust

- The viability of a SOA ecosystem depends on participants being able to effectively measure the 339
- trustworthiness of the system and of participants. Trust is a private assessment of a participant's belief in 340 341 the integrity and reliability of the SOA ecosystem (see Section 3.2.5.1).
- 342 Trust can be analyzed in terms of trust in infrastructure facilities (otherwise known as reliability), trust in
- the relationships and effects that are realized by interactions with services, and trust in the integrity and 343
- 344 confidentiality of those interactions particularly with respect to external factors (otherwise known as
- 345 security).
- Note that there is a distinction between trust in a SOA-based system and trust in the capabilities 346
- accessed via the SOA-based system. The former focuses on the role of SOA-based systems as a 347
- 348 medium for conducting business, the latter on the trustworthiness of participants in such systems. This
- architecture focuses on the former, while trying to encourage the latter. 349

350 2.1.2.3 Interaction

In order for a SOA ecosystem to function, it is essential that the means for participants to interact with 351

each other is available throughout the system. Interaction encompasses not only the mechanics and 352 353 semantics of **communication** but also the means for discovering and offering communication.

2.1.2.4 Control 354

- 355 Given that a large-scale SOA-based system may be populated with many services, and used by large
- numbers of people; managing SOA-based systems properly is a critical factor for engendering confidence 356
- 357 in them. This involves both managing the services themselves and managing the relationships between 358 people and the SOA-based systems they are utilizing; the latter being more commonly identified with
- 359 governance.
- 360 The governance of SOA-based systems requires decision makers to be able to set policies about 361 participants, services, and their relationships. It requires an ability to ensure that policies are effectively
- described and enforced. It also requires an effective means of measuring the historical and current 362 363 performances of services and participants.
- 364 The scope of management of SOA-based systems is constrained by the existence of multiple ownership 365 domains

2.2 Principles of this Reference Architecture Foundation 366

The following principles serve as core tenets that guided the evolution of this reference architecture. 367

368 **Technology Neutrality**

369 Statement: Technology neutrality refers to independence from particular technologies.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 17 of 115

370 371 372 373 374 375 376	Rationale:	We view technology independence as important for three main reasons: technology specific approach risks confusing issues that are technology specific with those that are integrally involved with realizing SOA-based systems; and we believe that the principles that underlie SOA-based systems have the potential to outlive any specific technologies that are used to deliver them. Finally, a great proportion of this architecture is inherently concerned with people, their relationships to services on SOA-based systems and to each other.
377 378 379 380 381 382	Implications:	The Reference Architecture Foundation must be technology neutral, meaning that we assume that technology will continue to evolve, and that over the lifetime of this architecture that multiple, potentially competing technologies will co-exist. Another immediate implication of technology independence is that greater effort is needed on the part of architects and other decision makers to construct systems based on this architecture.
383	Parsimony	
384 385	Statement:	Parsimony refers to economy of design, avoiding complexity where possible and minimizing the number of components and relationships needed.
386 387 388	Rationale:	The hallmark of good design is parsimony, or "less is better." It promotes better understandability or comprehension of a domain of discourse by avoiding gratuitous complexity, while being sufficiently rich to meet requirements.
389	Implications:	Parsimoniously designed systems tend to have fewer but better targeted features.
390	Distinction of	Concerns
391 392 393 394 395	Statement:	Distinction of Concerns refers to the ability to cleanly identify and separate out the concerns of specific stakeholders in such a way that it is possible to create architectural models that reflect those stakeholders' viewpoint. In this way, an individual stakeholder or a set of stakeholders that share common concerns only see those models that directly address their respective areas of interest.
396 397 398 399 400	Rationale:	As SOA-based systems become more mainstream and increasingly complex, it will be important for the architecture to be able to scale. Trying to maintain a single, monolithic architecture description that incorporates all models to address all possible system stakeholders and their associated concerns will not only rapidly become unmanageable with rising system complexity, but it will become unusable as well.
401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409	Implications:	This is a core tenet that drives this reference architecture to adopt the notion of architectural viewpoints and corresponding views. A viewpoint provides the formalization of the groupings of models representing one set of concerns relative to an architecture, while a view is the actual representation of a particular system. The ability to leverage an industry standard that formalizes this notion of architectural viewpoints and views helps us better ground these concepts for not only the developers of this reference architecture but also for its readers. The IEEE Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of Software-Intensive Systems [ANSI/IEEE 1471] , [ISO/IEC 42010] is the standard that serves as the basis for the structure and organization of this document.
410	Applicability	
411 412 413	Statement:	Applicability refers to that which is relevant. Here, an architecture is sought that is relevant to as many facets and applications of SOA-based systems as possible; even those yet unforeseen.
414 415	Rationale:	An architecture that is not relevant to its domain of discourse will not be adopted and thus likely to languish.
416 417 418 419 420	Implications:	The Reference Architecture Foundation needs to be relevant to the problem of matching needs and capabilities under disparate domains of ownership; to the concepts of 'Intranet SOA' (SOA within the enterprise) as well as 'Internet SOA' (SOA outside the enterprise); to the concept of 'Extranet SOA' (SOA within the extended enterprise, i.e., SOA with suppliers and trading partners); and finally, to 'net-centric SOA' or 'Internet-ready SOA.'

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 18 of 115

3 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem View 421 422 No man is an island 423 No man is an island entire of itself; every man 424 is a piece of the continent, a part of the main; 425 if a clod be washed away by the sea, Europe 426 is the less, as well as if a promontory were, as 427 well as any manner of thy friends or of thine 428 own were; any man's death diminishes me, because I am involved in mankind. 429 430 And therefore never send to know for whom 431 the bell tolls; it tolls for thee. 432 John Donne 433 The Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view in the SOA-RAF focuses on the constraints and context in 434 which people conduct business using a SOA-based system. By business we mean any shared activity 435 whose objective is to satisfy particular needs of each participant. To effectively employ the SOA paradigm, the architecture must take into account the fact and implications of different ownership 436 437 domains, and how best to organize and utilize capabilities that are distributed across those different 438 ownership domains. These are the main architectural issues that the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem 439 view tries to address. The subsections below expand on the abstract Reference Model by identifying more fully and with more 440 441 specificity what challenges need to be addressed in order to successfully apply the SOA paradigm. Although this view does not provide a specific recipe, it does identify the important things that need to be 442 443 considered and resolved within an ecosystem context. 444 The main models in this view are: 445 The SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the main relationships between the social structure and ٠ 446 the SOA-based System, as well as the key role played by the hybrid concept of participant in 447 both. the Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the key elements that underlie the 448 449 relationships between participants and that must be considered as pre-conditions in order to 450 effectively bring needs and capabilities together across ownership boundaries; the Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the key concepts involved in service actions, 451 and shows how joint action and real-world effect are the target outcomes that motivate 452 interacting in a SOA ecosystem. 453 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Participation in a SOA Ecosystem eviewpointSpec» stakeholders = "All participants in the SOA ecosystem" concerns = "Conduct business predictably and effectively modeling techniques = "UML class diagrams" «model» conform» Δ Δ SOA Ecosystem Model Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model 454

455

Figure 1 - Model elements described in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view

456 Furthermore, this *Participation in a SOA Ecosystem* view helps us understand the importance of
457 execution context – the set of technical and business elements that allow interaction to occur in, and thus
458 business to be conducted using, a SOA-based system.

459 The dominant mode of **communication** within a SOA ecosystem is electronic, supported by IT resources

and artifacts. The **stakeholders** (see next section) are nonetheless people: since there is inherent

461 indirection involved when people and systems interact using electronic means, we lay the foundations for

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 19 of 115

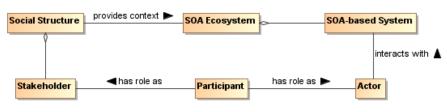
462 how communication can be used to represent and enable action. However, it is important to understand 463 that these communications are usually a means to an end and not the primary interest of the participants

464 of the ecosystem.

465 3.1 SOA Ecosystem Model

466 The OASIS SOA Reference Model defines Service Oriented Architecture (SOA) as "a paradigm for

- 467 organizing and utilizing distributed capabilities that may be *under the control of different ownership*
- 468 domains" (our emphasis) and services as "the mechanism by which needs and capabilities are brought 469 together". The central focus of SOA is "the task or business function – getting something done."
- 470 Together, these ideas describe an environment in which business functions (realized in the form of
- 471 services) address business needs. Service implementations utilize capabilities to produce specific (real
- 472 world) effects that fulfill those business needs. Both those using the services, and the capabilities
- 473 themselves, may be distributed across ownership domains, with different **policies** and conditions of use
- in force this environment is referred to as a **SOA Ecosystem** and is modeled in *Figure 2*.
- 475 The role of a service in a SOA Ecosystem is to enable effective **business solutions** in this environment.
- 476 Any technology system created to deliver a service in such an environment is referred to as a SOA-
- 477 **based system**. SOA is thus a paradigm that guides the identification, design, implementation (i.e.,
- 478 organization), and utilization of such services. SOA-based systems act as technology-based proxies for
 479 activity that would otherwise be carried out within and between social structures.
- 480 A SOA-based system is concerned with how actors interact within a system to deliver a specific result -
- 481 the delivery of a real world effect. The SOA ecosystem is concerned with all potential stakeholders and
- the roles that they can play; how some stakeholders' needs are satisfied by other stakeholders' solutions;
- 483 how stakeholders assess risk; how they relate to each other through policies and contracts; and how
- they communicate and establish relationships of **trust** in the processes leading to the delivery of a
- 485 specific result.



486 487

Figure 2 - SOA Ecosystem Model

488 SOA Ecosystem

489An environment encompassing one or more social structure(s) and SOA-based system(s) that490interact together to enable effective business solutions

491 SOA-based System

- 492 A technology system created to deliver a service within a SOA Ecosystem
- 493 Social Structures are defined and described in more detail in the next model, shown in *Figure 3*.
- 494 Stakeholders, Actors, and Participants are formally defined in Section 3.2.1.
- 495 Participants (as stakeholders and as actors), SOA-based systems, and the environment (or context)
- 496 within which they all operate, taken together forms the SOA ecosystem. Participants (or their delegates)
- 497 interact with a SOA-based system in the role of actors and are also members of a social structure in
- 498 the role of stakeholders. Here we explicitly note that stakeholders and, thus, participants are people³
- 499 because machines alone cannot truly have a stake in the outcomes of a social structure. Delegates may
- 500 be human and nonhuman but are not directly stakeholders. Stakeholders, both Participants and Non-

³ 'People' and 'person' must be understood as both humans and 'legal persons', such as companies, who have **rights** and **responsibilities** similar to 'natural persons' (humans)

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

501 **participants**, may potentially benefit from the services delivered by the SOA-based system. Again, this is 502 discussed more fully in Section 3.2.1.

- 503 The SOA ecosystem may reflect the SOA-based activities within a particular enterprise or of a wider
- 504 network of one or more enterprises and individuals; these are modeled in and discussed with respect to

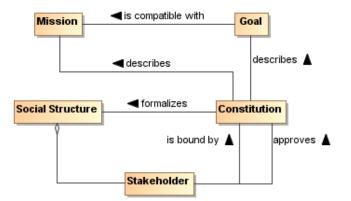
505 Figure 3. Although a SOA-based system is essentially an IT concern, it is nonetheless a system

- 506 engineered deliberately to be able to function in a SOA ecosystem. In this context, a service is the
- mechanism that brings a SOA-based system capability together with stakeholder needs in the wider
 ecosystem.
- 509 Several interdependent concerns are important in our view of a SOA ecosystem. The ecosystem includes 510 stakeholders who are participants in the development, deployment and **governance** and use of a system
- 511 and its services; or who may not participate in certain activities but are nonetheless are affected by the
- 512 system. Actors whether stakeholder **participants** or delegates who act only on behalf of participants
- 512 (without themselves having any stake in the actions that they have been tasked to perform) are
- 513 (without themselves having any stake in the actions that they have been tasked to perform) a 514 engaged in **actions** which have an impact on the real world and whose meaning and intent are
- 514 determined by implied or agreed-to semantics. This is discussed further in relation to the model in *Figure 4*
- determined by implied of agreed-to semantics. This is discussed further in relation to the model in F
- 516 and elaborated more fully in Section 3.3.

517 **3.2 Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model**

- 518 The Social Structure Model explains the relationships between stakeholders and the social context in
- 519 which they operate, within and between distinct boundaries. It is also the foundation for understanding
- 520 **security**, governance and management in the SOA ecosystem.
- Actions undertaken by people (whether natural or legal persons) are performed in a *social context* that defines the relationships between them. That context is provided by **social structures** existing in society
- 523 and the roles played by each person as stakeholders in those structures.
- 524 Whether informal peer groups, communities of practice, associations, enterprises, corporations,
- 525 government agencies, or entire nations, these structures interact with each other in the world, using
- 526 treaties, contracts, market rules, handshakes, negotiations and when necessary have recourse to
- 527 arbitration and legislation. They interact because there is a mutual benefit in doing so: one has something
- 528 that the other can provide. They interact across defined or implicit **ownership boundaries** that define the 529 limits of one structure (and the limits of its **authority**, responsibilities, capabilities, etc.) and the beginning 530 of another.
- 530 of another
- 531 Social structures, together with their **constitution**, their stakeholders, their mission and goals, need
- 532 therefore to be understood when examining the role that technology plays. Technology systems play an
- 533 increasing role in carrying out many of the functions performed by such structures and therefore model
- real-world procedures. The technology systems serve as proxies in digital space for these real-world
- 535 structures and procedures. The SOA paradigm is particularly concerned with designing, configuring and
- 536 managing such systems across ownership boundaries precisely because this mirrors the real-world
- 537 interactions between discrete structures and across their ownership boundaries.
- 538 A stakeholder in a social structure will be involved in many 'actions' that do not involve a SOA-based
- 539 system. Although such actions and the roles relating to them are outside the scope of this Reference
- 540 Architecture Foundation, they may nonetheless result in constraining or otherwise impacting a given SOA
- 541 ecosystem for example, a new item of legislation that regulates service interactions. The terms Actor
- and Action used throughout the document refer thus only to SOA-based systems.

02 November 2012 Page 21 of 115 Comment [PFB7]: Issue #313 -



543

544

Figure 3 - Social Structure Model

45 Social Structure

545 546

547

565

566

A nexus of relationships amongst people brought together for a specific purpose<mark>, the structure's mission</mark>.

The social structure is established with an implied or explicitly defined mission, usually reflected in the
goals laid down in the social structure's constitution or other 'charter'. Although goals are often expressed
in terms of general ambitions for the social structure's work or of desired end states, objectives are
expressed more formally in terms of specific, measurable, and achievable action required to realize those
states. Action in the context of a social structure is discussed in Section 3.3.

A social structure may involve any number of persons as stakeholders and a large number of different
relationships may exist among them. The organizing principle for these relationships is the social
structure's mission. Any given person can be a stakeholder in multiple social structures and a social
structure itself can be a stakeholder in its own right as part of a larger one or in another social structure
entirely. These multiple roles can result in disagreements, particularly when the mission or goals of

558 different social structures do not align.

A social structure can take different forms. An enterprise is a common kind of social structure with its
distinct legal personality; an online community group might represent a social structure of peers that is
very loose, albeit with a shared mission. A market represents a social structure of buyers and sellers.
Legislation in different geo-political areas (from local and regional to national or global) provides a
framework in which social structures can operate.

564 A social structure will further its goals in one of two ways:

- by acting alone, using its own resources;
- interacting with other structures and using their resources.

567 Many interactions take place within social structures. Some interactions may or may not cross ownership

- 568 boundaries depending on the scale and internal organization of the structure (an enterprise, for example, 569 can itself be composed of sub-enterprises). Our focus is on interactions *between* social structures,
- 569 can itself be composed of sub-enterprises). Our focus is on interactions *between* social structures,
 570 particularly as they determine the way that technology systems need to interact. Systems that are
- 571 designed to do this are SOA-based systems.
- 572 The nature and extent of the interactions that take place will reflect, often implicitly, degrees of trust
- 573 between people and the very specific circumstances of each person at the time, and over the course, of
- their interactions. It is in the nature of a SOA ecosystem that these relationships are rendered more
- 575 explicit and are formalized as a central part of what the **[SOA-RM]** refers to as Execution Context.
- 576 The validity of the interactions between social structures is not always clear and is often determined
- 577 ultimately by relevant legislation. For example, when a customer buys a book over the Internet, the
- validity of the transaction may be determined by the place of incorporation of the book vendor, the
- 579 residence of the buyer, or a combination of both. Such legal jurisdiction qualification is typically buried in 580 the fine print of the service description.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 22 of 115 Comment [PFB8]: Issue #313 -

Comment [PFB9]: Issue #313 -

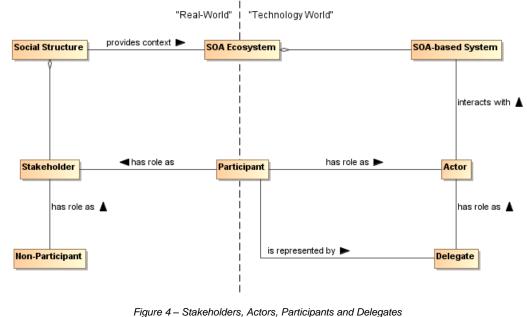
3

581 Constitution

- 582 A set of rules, written or unwritten, that formalize the mission, goals, scope, and functioning of a social structure. 583
- 584 Every social structure functions according to rules by which people interact with each other within the
- 585 structure. In some cases, this is based on an explicit agreement; in other cases, participants behave as
- though they agree to the constitution without a formal agreement. In still other cases, participants abide 586
- by the rules with some degree of reluctance. In all cases, the constitution may change over time; in those 587 cases of implicit agreement, the change can occur quickly. Section 5.1 contains a detailed discussion of 588
- 589 governance and SOA.

3.2.1 Stakeholders, Participants, Actors and Delegates 590

- 591 A social structure represents the interests of a collection of people who have rights and responsibilities
- 592 within the structure. People have a 'stake' in such a social structure, and when that social structure is part
- 593 of a SOA Ecosystem, the people continue to interact through their roles as stakeholders. In addition,
- 594 people - either directly or through their delegates - interact with SOA-based (technology) systems. Here,
- 595 the people interact through their roles as actors interacting with specific system-level activity.
- 596 A person who participates in a social structure as a stakeholder and interacts with a SOA-based system
- 597 as an actor is defined as an ecosystem Participant. The concept of participant is particularly important as 598 it reflects a hybrid role of a Stakeholder concerned with expressing needs and seeing those needs fulfilled
- and an Actor directly involved with system-level activity that result in necessary effects. 599
- 600 The hybrid role of Participant provides a bridge between social structures within the wider (real-world)
- 601 ecosystem - in particular the world of the stakeholder - and the more specific (usually technology-
- 602 focused) system - the world of the actor.
- 603 The concept of the ecosystem therefore embraces all aspects of the 'real world', human-centered, social
- structures that are concerned with business interactions together with the technology-centered SOA-604
- 605 based system that deliver services:



607

606

608 Stakeholder

609 A person with an interest (a 'stake') in a social structure.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 23 of 115 610 Not all stakeholders necessarily participate in all activities in the SOA ecosystem; indeed, the interest of

611 non-participant stakeholders may be to realize the benefits of a well-functioning ecosystem and not suffer

- 612 unwanted consequences. Non-participant stakeholders cannot all or always be identified in advance but
- 613 due account is often taken of such stakeholder types, including potential customers, beneficiaries, and
- other affected third parties. A stakeholder may be a participant with respect to some activities and a non-
- 615 participant with respect to others.
- 616 Actor

622

623

- 617 A role played either by a **Participant** or its **Delegate** and that interacts with a **SOA-based** 618 system.
- 619 Participant
- 620 A person who plays a role *both* in the **SOA ecosystem** as a **stakeholder** *and* with the **SOA**-621 **based system** as an **actor** either
 - directly, in the case of a human participant; or
 - indirectly, via a **delegate**.
- 624 Not all participants are necessarily benign to the social structure: such 'negative stakeholders' might 625 deliberately seek a negative impact on the ecosystem (such as hackers or criminals) and social structures 626 will work to appure that they are not able to appare a structure activity of the second structures
- 626 will work to ensure that they are not able to operate as welcome participants.
- 627 Non-Participant
- 628 A per 629 has a
 - A person who plays no role as a **participant** in a **social structure**'s activities but nonetheless has an interest in, or is affected by, such activities.

630 Delegate

- A role played by a human or an automated or semi-automated agent and acting on behalf of a
 participant but not directly sharing the participant's stake in the outcome.
- 633 Many actors interact with a SOA-based system, including software agents that permit people to offer, and
- 634 interact with, services; delegates that represent the interests of other participants; or security agents
 635 charged with managing the security of the ecosystem. Note that automated agents are *always* delegates,
 636 in that they act on behalf of a participant.
- In the different models of the SOA-RAF, the term actor is used when action is being considered at the
 level of the SOA-based system and when it is not relevant who is carrying out the action. However, if the
- 639 actor is acting explicitly *on behalf of* a participant, then we use the term delegate. This underlines the
- 640 importance of delegation in SOA-based systems, whether the delegation is of work procedures carried 641 out by human agents who have no stake in the actions with which they are tasked but act on behalf of a
- 642 participant who does; or whether the delegation is performed by technology (automation). On the other
- hand, if it is important to emphasize that when the actor is also a stakeholder in the ecosystem, then we
- 644 use the term participant. This also underlines the pivotal role played by a participant, in a unique position
- 645 between the social structure and the SOA-based system, in the broader ecosystem.
- 646 The difference between a participant and a delegate is that a delegate acts on behalf of a participant and
- 647 must have the authority to do so. Because of this, every social structure must clearly define the roles
- 648 assigned to actors (whether participants or delegates) in carrying out activity within its domain.

649 3.2.2 Social Structures and Roles

- 650 Social structures are abstractions: they cannot directly perform actions with SOA-based systems only
- 651 actors can, whether they be participants acting under their own volition or delegates (human or not)
- 652 simply following the instructions of participants. An actor advances the objectives of a social structure
- 653 through its interaction with SOA-based systems, influencing actions that deliver results. The specifics of 654 the interaction depend on the roles defined by the social structure that the actor may assume or have
- 655 conferred and the nature of the relationships between the stakeholders concerned. These relationships
- 656 can introduce constraints on an actor when engaged in an action. These points are illustrated in *Figure 5*.
- A role is not immutable and is often time-bound. An actor can have one or more roles concurrently and
- may change them over time and in different contexts, even over the course of a particular interaction.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 24 of 115

3.2.2.1 Authority, Rights, and Responsibilities 659

660 One participant with appropriate authority in the social structure may formally designate a role for a

661 delegate or another participant, with associated rights and responsibilities, and that authority may even

662 qualify a period during which the designated role may be valid. In addition, while many roles are clearly identified, with appropriate names and definitions of responsibilities, it is also possible to separately

663 bestow rights, bestow or assume responsibilities and so on, often in a temporary fashion. For example, 664

665 when a company president delegates certain responsibilities on another person, this does not imply that

666 the other person has become company president. Likewise, a company president may bestow on

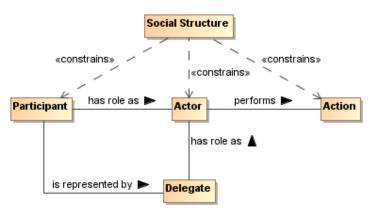
someone else her role during a period of time that she is on vacation or otherwise unreachable with the 667

668 understanding that she will re-assume the role when she returns from vacation.

Conversely, someone who exhibits qualification and skill may assume a role without any formal 669

designation. For example, an office administrator who has demonstrated facility with personal computers 670

- may be known as (and thus assumed to role of) the 'go to' person for people who need help with their 671
- 672 computers.
- 673 The social structure is responsible for establishing the authority by which actors carry out actions in line
- with defined constraints: 674



675 676

Figure 5 - Social Structures, Roles and Action

677 Authority

- 678 A right conferred on a participant to ensure that actions are carried out consistent with the objectives of a social structure. 679
- 680 Actions are carried out by actors, either participants themselves or delegates acting on their behalf, by
- interacting with the SOA-based system. 681

682 Right

- 683 A predetermined permission conferred upon an actor to perform some action or assume a role 684 in relation to the social structure.
- Rights can be constrained. For example, sellers might have a general right to refuse service to potential 685 customers but this right could be constrained so as to be exercised only when certain criteria are met. 686

687 Responsibility

- 688 A predetermined obligation on a participant to ensure that some action is performed or assume a role in relation to other participants. 689
- Responsibility implies human agency and thus aligns with participants and potentially human delegates 690 691 but not with non-human delegates. This applies even if the consequences of such responsibility can
- 692 impact other (human and non-human) actors. Having authority often implies having responsibility.
- 693
- Rights, authorities, responsibilities and roles form the foundation for the security model as well as contributing to the governance model in the **Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem** View of the SOA-RAF. 694

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 25 of 115 Comment [PFB10]: Issue #313

Comment [PFB11]: Issue #313 - 6

695 3.2.2.2 Permissions and Obligations

- 696 People will assume and perform roles according to their actual or perceived rights and responsibilities,
- 697 with or without explicit authority. In the context of a SOA ecosystem, human abilities and skills are
- relevant as they equip individuals with knowledge, information and tools that may be necessary to have meaningful and productive interactions with a view to achieving a desired outcome. For example, a
- meaningful and productive interactions with a view to achieving a desired outcome. For example, a
 person who wants a particular book, and has both the right and responsibility of purchasing the book from
- a given bookseller, will not have that need met from the online delegate of that bookstore if he does not
- 702 know how to use a web browser. Equally, just because someone does have the requisite knowledge or
- 703 skills does not entitle them per se to interact with a specific system.
- Assuming or accepting rights and responsibilities depend on two important types of constraints that are
 relevant to a SOA ecosystem: Permission and Obligation.
- 706 Permission
- 707 A constraint that identifies **actions** that an **actor** is (or is not) allowed to perform and/or the 708 **states** in which the actor is (or is not) permitted.
- 709 Note that permissions are distinct from ability, which refers to whether an actor has the capacity to
- 710 perform the action. Permission does not always involve acting on behalf of anyone, nor does it imply or
- 711 require the capacity to perform the action.

712 Obligation

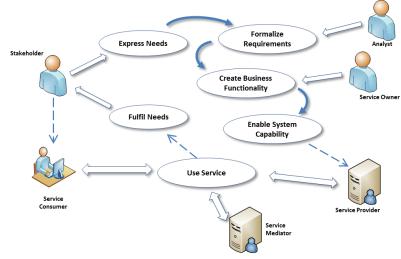
- 713A constraint that prescribes the actions that an actor must (or must not) perform and/or the714states the actor must (or must not) attain or maintain.
- 715 An example of obligations is the case where the service **consumer** and **provider** (see below) have 716 entered into an agreement to provide and consume a service such that the consumer is obligated to pay
- for the service and the provider is obligated to provide the service based on the terms of the contract.
- 718 An obligation can also be a **requirement** to maintain a given **state**. This may range from a requirement to 719 maintain a minimum balance on an account to a requirement that a service provider 'remember' that a
- 720 particular service consumer is logged in.
- 721 Both permissions and obligations can be identified ahead of time, but only permissions can be validated a
- 722 priori: before the intended action or before entering the constrained state. Obligations can only be
- validated a posteriori through some form of auditing or verification process.

724 3.2.2.3 Service Roles

- 725 As in roles generally, a participant can play one or more in the SOA ecosystem, depending on the
- 726 context. A participant may be playing a role of a service provider in one relationship while simultaneously 727 playing the role of a consumer in another. Roles inherent to the SOA paradigm include **Consumer**,
- 728 **Provider**, **Owner**, and **Mediator**.
- 729 Provider

730

- A role assumed by a **participant** who is offering a service.
- 731 Consumer
- 732 A role assumed by a **participant** who is interacting with a service in order to fulfill a **need**.
- 733 Mediator
- 734A role assumed by a participant to facilitate interaction and connectivity in the offering and use of735services.
- 736 Owner
- 737 A role assumed by a **participant** who is claiming and exercising **ownership** over a service.



738 739

Figure 6 - Roles in a Service

740 Service consumers typically initiate interactions, but this is not necessarily true in all situations.

Additionally, several stakeholders may be involved in a service interaction supporting a given consumer. 741

742 The roles of service provider and service consumer are often seen as symmetrical, which is also not

743 entirely correct. A stakeholder tends to express a Need in non-formal terms: "I want to buy that book". 744 The type of need that a service is intended to fulfill has to be formalized and encapsulated by designers

and developers as a **Requirement**. This Requirement should then be reflected in the target service, as a

745 Capability that, when accessed via a service, delivers a Real World Effect to an arbitrary consumer: 746

"The chosen book is ordered for the consumer." It thus fulfills the need that has been defined for an 747

748 archetypal consumer.

749 Specific and particular customers may not experience a need exactly as captured by the service: "I don't 750 want to pay that much for the book", "I wanted an eBook version", etc. There can therefore be a process

751 of implicit and explicit negotiation between the consumer and the service, aimed at finding a 'best fit'

between the consumer's specific need and the capabilities of the service that are available and consistent 752

753 with the service provider's offering. This process may continue up until the point that the consumer is able

to accept what is on offer as being the best fit and finally 'invokes' the service. 'Execution context' has 754 755 thus been established. Conditions and agreements that contribute to the execution context are discussed

756 throughout this Reference Architecture.

757 Service mediation by a participant can take many forms and may invoke and use other services in order

to fulfill such mediation. For example, it might use a service registry in order to identify possible service 758

759 partners; or, in our book-buying example, it might provide a price comparison service, suggest alternative

suppliers, different language editions or delivery options. 760

3.2.3 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities 761

762 Participants in a SOA ecosystem often need other participants to do something, leveraging a capability 763 that they do not themselves possess. For example, a customer requiring a book may call upon a service

provider to deliver the book. Likewise, the service provider requires the customer to pay for it. 764

765 There is a reason that participants are engaged: they have different needs and have or apply different

capabilities for satisfying them. These are core to the concept of a service. The SOA-RM defines a 766

service as "the mechanism by which needs and capabilities are brought together". This idea of services 767 being a mechanism 'between' needs and capabilities was introduced in order to emphasize capability as 768

the notional or existing business functionality that would address a well-defined need. Service is 769

770 therefore the implementation of such business functionality such that it is accessible through a well-

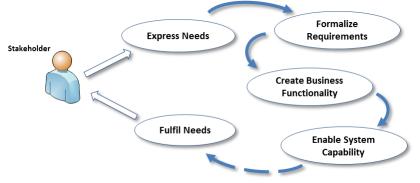
soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 27 of 115

- 771 defined interface. A capability that is isolated (i.e., it is inaccessible to potential consumers) is
- emphatically not a service.

773 Business Functionality

- A defined set of business-aligned tasks that provide recognizable business value to consumer
 stakeholders and possibly others in the SOA ecosystem.
- 776 The idea of a service in a SOA ecosystem combines business functionality with implementation, including
- 777 the artifacts needed and made available as IT resources. From the perspective of software developers, a
- 578 SOA service enables the use of capabilities in an IT context. For the consumer, the service (combining
- business functionality and implementation) generates intended real world effects. The consumer is not
- concerned with the underlying artifacts which make that delivery possible.



781 782

Figure 7 - Cycle of Needs, Requirements, and Fulfillment

783 In a SOA context, the stakeholder expresses a need (for example, the consumer who states "I want to buy a book") and looks to an appropriate service to fulfill that need and assesses issues such as the 784 trustworthiness, intent and willingness of a particular provider. This ecosystem communication continues 785 786 up to the point when the stakeholder is ready to act. The stakeholder will then interact with a provider by 787 invoking a service (for example, by ordering the book using an online bookseller) and engaging in 788 relevant actions with the system (at this point, in a role as an actor, interacting with the system through a 789 browser or mobile device, validating the purchase, submitting billing and delivery details) with a view to achieving the desired real world effect (having the book delivered). 790

791 Need

792

801

A general statement expressed by a stakeholder of something deemed necessary.

A need may be formalized as one or more requirements that must be fulfilled in order to achieve a statedgoal.

795 Requirement

- A formal statement of a desired result (a **real world effect**) that, if achieved, will satisfy a **need**.
- This requirement can then be used to create a capability that in turn can be brought to bear to satisfy that need. Both the requirement and the capability to fulfill it are expressed in terms of desired real world effect.
- 800 Capability

An ability to deliver a real world effect.

802 The Reference Model makes a distinction between a capability (as a *potential* to deliver the real world

effect) and the ability of bringing that capability to bear (via a realized service) as the realization of the
 real world effect.

805 Real World Effect

806 A measurable change to the **shared state** of pertinent entities, relevant to and experienced by 807 specific **stakeholders** of an **ecosystem**.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 28 of 115

- 808 This implies measurable change in the overall state of the SOA ecosystem. In practice, however, it is
- 809 specific state changes of certain entities that are relevant to particular participants that constitute the real 810 world effect as experienced by those participants.
- 811 Objectives refer to real world effects that participants believe are achievable by a specific action or set of
- 812 actions that deliver appropriate changes in shared state, as distinct from a more generally stated 'goal'.
- For example, someone may wish to have enough light to read a book. In order to satisfy that goal, the reader walks over to flip a light switch. The *objective* is to change the state of the light bulb, by turning on
- the lamp, whereas the *goal* is to be able to read. The *real world effect* is more light being available to
- 816 enable the person to read.
- 817 While an effect is any measurable change resulting from an action, a SOA ecosystem is concerned more 818 specifically with real world effects.

819 3.2.4 Resource and Ownership

820 3.2.4.1 Resource

- 821 A resource is generally understood as an asset: it has value to someone. Key to this concept in a SOA
- 822 ecosystem is that a resource must be identifiable.

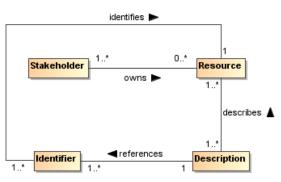


Figure 8 - Resources

823 824

826

834

825 Resource

- An identifiable entity that has value to a stakeholder.
- A resource may be identifiable by different methods but within a SOA ecosystem a resource must have at
 least one well-formed identifier that may be unambiguously resolved to the intended resource.
- 829 Codified (but not *implied*) contracts, policies, obligations, and permissions are all examples of resources,
- as are capabilities, services, service descriptions, and SOA-based systems. An *implied* policy, contract,
- obligation or permission would not be a resource, even though it may have value to a stakeholder,
- 832 because it is not an identifiable entity.

833 Identifier

A sequence of characters that unambiguously indicates a particular resource.

- 835 Identifiers are assigned by social structures according to context, policies and procedures considered
 836 sufficient for that structure's purposes.
- 837 For example, a group of otherwise unrelated humans are all, in a given context, employees of a particular
- 838 company and managed there as human resources. That company's policy is to assign each employee a 839 unique identifier number and has processes in place to do this, including verifying documentary evidence
- unique identifier number and has processes in place to do this, including verifying documentary evidence
 (such as a birth certificate or ID). Each set of policies and procedures will reflect the needs of the social
- structure for its particular context. Resources are typically used or managed by different stakeholder
- groups, each of which may need to identify those resources in some particular way. As such, a given
- resource may have multiple identifiers, each valid for a different context. In a SOA ecosystem, it is good

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 29 of 115 practice to use globally unique identifiers (for example, Internationalized Resource Identifiers, or IRIs)
 irrespective of any other resource identifier that might be in use for a particular context.

846 The ability to identify a resource is important in interactions to determine such things as rights and

847 authorizations, to understand what functions are being performed and what the results mean, and to

ensure repeatability or characterize differences with future interactions. Many interactions within a SOA

849 ecosystem take place across ownership boundaries. Identifiers provide the means for all resources
 850 important to a given SOA-based system to be *unambiguously* identifiable at any moment and in any

851 interaction.

852 Resources frequently have descriptions and the descriptions themselves may be considered resources.

853 This is discussed in Section 4.1.1. Resource description may link to other resources and their

descriptions; for example, a service description may link to a policy that constrains the conditions of use
 of the service.

856 **3.2.4.2 Ownership**

857 Ownership is defined as a relationship between a stakeholder and a resource, where some stakeholder 858 (in a role as owner) has certain claims with respect to the resource.

Typically, the ownership relationship is one of control: the owner of a resource can control some aspect of the resource.

861 Ownership

A set of claims, expressed as rights and responsibilities that a stakeholder has in relation to a
 resource; it may include the right to transfer that ownership, or some subset of rights and
 responsibilities, to another entity.

865 To own a resource implies taking responsibility for creating, maintaining and, if it is to be available to

others, provisioning the resource. More than one stakeholder may own different rights or responsibilities
associated with a given service, such as one stakeholder having the responsibility to deploy a capability
as a service, another owning the rights to the profits that result from charging consumers for using the
service, and yet another owning the right to use the service. There may also be joint ownership of a

870 resource, where the rights and responsibilities are shared.

A stakeholder who owns a resource may delegate some or all of these rights and responsibilities to others, but typically retains the responsibility to see that the delegated rights and responsibilities are

873 exercised as intended

A crucial property that distinguishes ownership from a more limited right to use is the right to transfer

875 rights and responsibilities totally and irrevocably to another. When participants use but do not own a

- 876 resource, they may not be allowed to transfer the right to use the resource to a third participant. The
- owner of the resource maintains the rights and responsibilities of being able to authorize others to use the
- 878 owned resource.
- 879 Ownership is defined in relation to the social structure relative to which the given rights and
- 880 responsibilities are exercised. For example, there may be constraints on how ownership may be

transferred, such as a government may not permit a corporation to transfer assets to a subsidiary in a

882 different jurisdiction.

883 Ownership Boundary

The extent of ownership asserted by a stakeholder or a social structure over a set of
 resources and for which rights and responsibilities are claimed and (usually) recognized by
 other stakeholders.

887 3.2.5 Establishing Execution Context

888 In a SOA ecosystem, providers and consumers of services may be, or may be acting on behalf of,

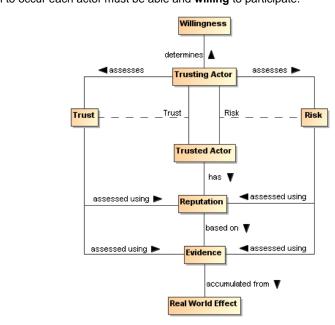
different owners, and thus the interaction between the provider and the consumer of a given service may

- 890 necessarily cross an ownership boundary. It is important to identify these ownership boundaries in a SOA
- 891 ecosystem and successfully crossing them in-is a key aspect of establishing execution context. This is
- turn requires that the elements identified in the following sections be addressed.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 E Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASI

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 30 of 115 **Comment [PFB12]:** Issue #313 - 7

3.2.5.1 Trust and Risk 893



894 For an interaction to occur each actor must be able and willing to participate.

895 896

898

899

Figure 9 - Willingness and Trust

Willingness 897

The internal commitment of a human actor (or of an automated non-human agent acting on a participant's behalf) to carry out its part of an interaction.

- 900 Willingness to interact is not the same as a willingness to perform requested actions, however, For
- example, a service provider that rejects all attempts to perform a particular action may still be fully willing 901 902 and engaged in interacting with the consumer. Important considerations in establishing willingness are 903 both trust and risk.
- 904 Trust
- 905 The private assessment or internal perception of one actor that another actor will perform actions in accordance with an assertion regarding a desired real world effect. 906

907 Risk

- 908 The private assessment or internal perception of the likelihood that certain undesirable real world 909 effects will result from actions taken and the consequences or implications of such.
- Trust is involved in all interactions and each actor will play a role as either (or alternately) a 'trusting' actor 910 and a 'trusted' actor. These roles are needed in order that all actors can trust all others in any given
- 911 912 interaction, at least to the extent required for continuance of the interaction. The degree and nature of that
- trust is likely to be different for each actor, most especially when those actors are in different ownership 913 914 boundaries.
- An actor perceiving risk may take actions to mitigate that risk. At one extreme this will result in a refusal to 915
- 916 interact. Alternately, it may involve adding protection - for example by using encrypted communication
- and/or anonymization to reduce the perception of risk. Often, standard procedures are put in place to 917 increase trust and to mitigate risk.
- 918
- 919

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

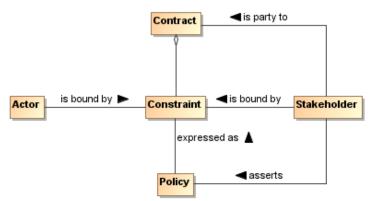
Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 31 of 115 Comment [PFB13]: Issue #313

- 8

- 920 The assessments of trust and risk are based on evidence available to the trusting actor. In general, the
- 921 trusting actor will seek evidence directly from the *trusted* actor (e.g., via documentation provided via the
- service description) as well as evidence of the reputation of the trusted actor (e.g., third-party annotationssuch as consumer feedback).
- 924 Trust is based on the confidence that the trusting actor has accurately and sufficiently gathered and925 assessed evidence to the degree appropriate for the situation being assessed.
- 926 Assessment of trust is rarely binary. An actor is not completely trusted or untrusted because there is
- typically some degree of uncertainty in the accuracy or completeness of the evidence or the assessment.
 Similarly, there may be uncertainty in the amount and potential consequences of risk.
- 929 The relevance of trust to interaction depends on the assessment of risk. If there is little or no perceived
- 930 risk, or the risk can be covered by another party who accepts responsibility for it, then the degree of trust
- 931 may be less or not relevant in assessing possible actions. For example, most people consider there to be 932 an acceptable level of risk to privacy when using search engines, and submit queries without any sense
- an acceptable level of risk to privacy when using search engines, and submit queries without any s
 of trust being considered.
- 934 As perceived risk increases, the issue of trust becomes more of a consideration. For interactions with a
- high degree of risk, the trusting actor will typically require stronger or additional evidence when evaluating
- the balance between risk and trust. An example of high-risk is where a consumer's business is dependent
- 937 on the provider's service meeting certain availability and security requirements. If the service fails to meet
- 938 those requirements, the service consumer will go out of business. In this example, the consumer will look 939 for evidence that the likelihood of the service not meeting the performance and security requirements is
- 940 extremely low.

941 3.2.5.2 Policies and Contracts

- 942 As noted in the Reference Model, a policy represents some commitment and/or constraint advertised and
- 943 enforced by a stakeholder and that stakeholder alone. A contract, on the other hand, represents an
- agreement by two or more participants. Enforcement of contracts may or may not be the responsibility of
- 945 the parties to the agreement but is usually performed by a stakeholder in the ecosystem (public authority,
- 946 legal system, etc.).



947 948

Figure 10 – Policies, Contracts and Constraints

- 949 Policy
- An expression of constraints made by a stakeholder that the stakeholder commits to uphold and,
 if desired or necessary, enforce. The constraints are usually stated as permissions and
 obligations that affect the behavior of stakeholders or of any actor acting on their behalf.
- 953 Policies have an **owner** the stakeholder who asserts and takes responsibility for the policy. This owner
- 954 may or may not be the owner of the object of the policy. These constraints may affect the stakeholder 955 asserting the policy or any other stakeholder involved. The constraints themselves represent some
- 956 measurable limitation on the state or behavior of the object of the policy, or of those who interact with it.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 32 of 115

957 Contract

- 958 An agreement made by two or more **participants** (the contracting parties) on a set of conditions (or contractual terms) together with a set of constraints that govern their behavior and/or state in 959 fulfilling those conditions. 960
- 961 A service provider's policy may become a service provider/consumer contract when a service consumer
- agrees to the provider's policy. That agreement may be formal, or may be informal. If a consumer's policy 962
- and a provider's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human 963
- interactions) or mediation must resolve the mutual exclusion before the service consumer/provider 964 965 interaction can occur. Note that this also applies if the consumer instead of the provider introduces the
- 966 policy.
- 967 Both policies and contracts imply a desire to see constraints respected and enforced. Stakeholders are
- 968 responsible for ensuring that any constraints in the policy or contract are enforced, although the actual
- enforcement may be delegated to a different mechanism. A contract does not necessarily oblige the 969 contracting parties to act (for example to use a service) but it does constrain how they act if and when the 970
- condition covered by the contract occurs (for example, when a service is invoked and used). 971
- 972 The realization of policies and contracts is discussed in Section 4.4 and contracts in the context of management are discussed in Section 5.3.4.
- 973

3.2.5.3 Communication 974

975 Communication

- 976 A process involving the exchange of information between a sender and one or more recipients 977 and that ideally culminates in mutual understanding between them.
- 978 A communication involves a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, who
- 979 must be able to correctly interpret the message - or at least those parts of the message relevant to sender and recipient in the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the 980 981 communication to be successful and failing which, communication is not effective.
- 982 A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware
- 983 of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given 984 communication can be a simple one-way transmission and not require a response by the recipient.
- 985 However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication.
- Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semantic engagement: the proper 986 987 understanding of a message in a given context.
- We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a 988
- common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More 989 990 formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.
- 991 In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on
- 992 whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in
- 993 progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine
- 994 communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not
- 995 found in everyday human communication.

3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement 996

- 997 Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action
- being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and 998 999 important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the
- ecosystem. 1000
- In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a 1001
- 1002 message's recipient must effectively understand and process statements, made in the sender's message,
- in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human 1003
- actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements 1004
- 1005 in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.

Edits to CSPRD03 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 33 of 115

- 1006 Understanding and interpreting those assertions in a SOA-based system allows all the actors in any
- 1007 particular joint action to 'know' what may be expected of them. An actor can potentially 'understand' an
- assertion in a number of ways, but it is specifically the process of arriving at a *shared* understanding that
- is important in the ecosystem. This process is semantic engagement and it takes place in different forms
 throughout the SOA ecosystem. It can be instantaneous or progressively achieved. Participants who
- 1011 play the role both as actors in the SOA-based system and as stakeholders in social structures and the
- 1012 wider ecosystem can be pivotal in resolving problems of understanding and determining when there is a
- 1013 level of engagement appropriate and sufficient to the particular context.

1014 Semantic Engagement

- 1015 The process by which an **actor** engages with a set of assertions based on that actor's 1016 interpretation and understanding of those assertions.
- 1017 Different actors have differing capabilities and requirements for understanding assertions. This is true for
- both human and non-human actors. For example, a purchase order process does not require that a message forwarding agent 'understand' the purchase order, but a processing agent does need to
- 1020 'understand' the purchase order in order to know what to do with the order once received.
- 1021 The impact of any assertion can only be fully understood in terms of specific social contexts that
- 1022 necessarily include the actors that are involved. For example, a policy statement that governs the actions
- 1023 relating to a particular resource may have a different impact or purpose for the participant that owns the
- 1024 resource than for the actor that is trying to access it: the former understands the purpose of the policy as
- 1025 a statement of enforcement the latter understands it as a statement of constraint.

1026 3.3 Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model

- 1027 Participants cannot always achieve desired results by leveraging resources in their own ownership
- domain. This unfulfilled need leads them to seek and leverage services provided by other participants and using resources beyond their ownership and control. The participants identify service providers with which
- 1030 they think they can interact to achieve their objective and engage in joint action with those other actors
- 1031 (service providers) in order to bring about the desired outcome. The SOA ecosystem provides the
- 1032 environment in which this happens.
- 1033 An action model is put forth a-priori by the service provider, and is effectively an undertaking by the
- service provider that the actions identified in the action model and invoked consistent with the process model – will result in the described real world effect. The action model describes the actions leading to a
- 1036 real-world effect. A potential service consumer who is interested in a particular outcome to satisfy their
- 1037 need must understand those actions as capable of achieving that desired outcome.
- 1038 When the consumer 'invokes' a service, a joint action is started as identified in the action model,
- 1039 consistent with the temporal sequence as defined by the process model, and where the consumer and 1040 the provider are the two parties of the joint action. Additionally, the consumer can be assured that the
- 1041 identified real-world effects will be accomplished through evidence provided via the service description.
- 1042 Since the service provider does not know about all potential service consumers, the service provider may
- also describe what additional constraints are necessary in order for the service consumer to invoke
- 1044 particular actions, and thus participate in the joint action. These additional constraints, along with others
- that might not be listed, are preconditions for the joint action to occur and/or continue (as per the process
- model), and are referred to in the SOA-RM as execution context. Execution context goes all the way from
 human beings involved in aligning policies, semantics, network connectivity and communication
- 1047 numan beings involved in aligning policies, semantics, network connectivity and communication protocols, to the automated negotiation of security protocols and end-points as the individual actions
- 1049 proceed through the process model.
- Also, it is important to note that both actions and real world effect are recursive in nature, in the sense
 that they can often be broken down into more and more granularity depending on how they are examined
 and what level of detail is important.
- 1053 All of these things are important to getting to the core of participants' concern in a SOA ecosystem: the
- ability to leverage resources or capabilities to achieve a desired outcome, and in particular where those resources or capabilities do not belong to them or are beyond their direct control. i.e., that are outside of
- 1056 their ownership boundary.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Copyrig

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 34 of 115 1057 In order to use such resources, participants must be able to identify their own needs; state those needs in

1058 the form of requirements; compose or identify a suitable business solution using resources or capabilities

- 1059 that will meet their needs; and engage in joint action the coordinated set of actions that participants 1060 pursue in order to achieve measurable results in furtherance of their goals.
- In order to act in a way that is appropriate and consistent, participants must communicate with each other
 about their own goals, objectives and policies, and those of others. This is the main concern of Semantic
 Engagement.
- 1064 A key aspect of joint action revolves around the trust that both parties must exhibit in order to participate 1065 in the joint action. The willingness to act and a mutual understanding of both the information exchanged
- 1066 and the expected results is the particular focus of Sections 3.2.5.1 and 3.2.5.4.

1067 3.3.1 Services Reflecting Business

1068 The SOA paradigm often emphasizes the interface through which service interaction is accomplished. 1069 While this enables predictable integration in the sense of traditional software development, the prescribed

1070 interface alone does not guarantee that services will be composable into business solutions.

1071 Business Solution

1072A set of defined interactions that combine implemented or notional business functionality in1073order to address a set of business needs.

1074 Composability

- 1075The ability to combine individual services, each providing defined **business functionality**, so as1076to provide more complex **business solutions**.
- 1077 To achieve composability, capabilities must be identified that serve as building blocks for business
- solutions. In a SOA ecosystem, these building blocks are captured as services representing well-defined
 business functions, operating under well-defined policies and other constraints, and generating well defined real world effects. These service building blocks should be relatively stable so as not to force
 repeated changes in the compositions that utilize them, but should also embody SOA attributes that
 readily support creating compositions that can be varied to reflect changing circumstances.
- reading support clearing compositions that can be valied to reliect changing circumstances.
- 1083 The SOA paradigm emphasizes both composition of services and opacity of how a given service is 1084 implemented. With respect to opacity, the SOA-RM states that the service could carry out its described
- functionality through one or more automated and/or manual processes that in turn could invoke other
 available services.
- Any composition can itself be made available as a service and the details of the business functionality,
 conditions of use, and effects are among the information documented in its service description.
- 1089 Composability is important because many of the benefits of a SOA approach assume multiple uses for
- 1090 services, and multiple use requires that the service deliver a business function that is reusable in multiple
- 1091 business solutions. Simply providing a Web Service interface for an existing IT artifact does not, in
- 1092 general, create opportunities for sharing business functions. Furthermore, the use of tools to auto-
- 1093 generate service software interfaces will not guarantee services than can effectively be used within
- 1094 compositions if the underlying code represents programming constructs rather than business functions. In
- such cases, services that directly expose the software details will be as brittle to change as the underlying code and will not exhibit the characteristic of loose coupling.

1097 3.3.2 Activity, Action, and Joint Action

- In general terms, entities act in order to fulfill particular objectives. More precisely, they generate activity.
 An activity is made up of specific Actions (or other Activities) and is formally defined in [ISO/IEC 10746-2]
- as "a single-headed directed acyclic graph of actions..."⁴ It is most clearly understood diagrammatically:

⁴ See [ISO/IEC 10746] Part 2: Foundations

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 35 of 115

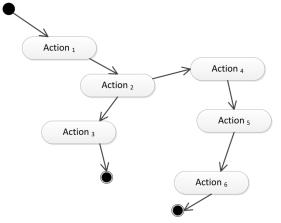




Figure 11: An Activity, expressed informally as a graph of Actions, with a single Start point and alternative End points

1104 What constitutes an Action or an Activity will be a matter of context. For the SOA-RAF, an Action

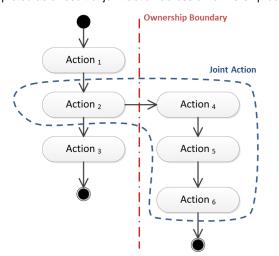
represents the smallest and most discrete activity that must be modeled for a given Viewpoint.

1106 The form of Activity that is of most interest within a SOA ecosystem is that involving Actions as defined

below and their interaction across ownership boundaries (and thus involving interaction between more than one actor) – we call this **joint action**. In *Figure 12* below, one line of activity (on the left) can be

than one actor) – we call this **joint action**. In *Figure 12* below, one line of activity (on the left) can be completed thru Action, without crossing any ownership boundary but the alternative path, starting at

Action₄, can only be completed as a result of joint action across an ownership boundary:



1111 1112

Figure 12: Activity involving Actions across an ownership boundary

1113 Action

1114 The application of intent by an **actor** to cause an effect.

1115 The aspect of action that distinguishes it from mere force or accident is that someone *intends* that the

action achieves a desired objective or effect. This definition of action is very general. In the case of SOA,

1117 we are mostly concerned with actions that take place within a system and have specific effects on the

1118 SOA ecosystem – defined in section 3.2.3 as real world effects. The actual real world effect of an action,

1119 however, may go beyond the intended effect.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 36 of 115 1120 In order for multiple actors to participate in a joint action, they must each act according to their role within 1121 the joint action. This is achieved through communication and messaging.

- 1122 Communication the formulation, transmission, receipt and interpretation of messages is the
- foundation of all joint actions within the SOA ecosystem, given the inherent separation often across
- 1124 ownership boundaries of actors in the system.
- 1125 Communication between actors requires that they play the roles of 'sender' or 'receiver' of messages as
- appropriate to a particular action although it is not necessarily required that they both be active simultaneously.
- 1128 An actor sends a message in order to communicate with other actors. The communication itself is often
- not intended as part of the desired real world effect but rather includes messages that seek to establish, manage, monitor, report on, and guide the joint action throughout its execution.
- 1131 Like communication, joint action usually involves different actors. However, joint action resulting from
- 1132 the deliberate actions undertaken by different actors *intentionally* impacts shared state within the
- 1133 system leading to real world effects.

1134 Joint Action

- 1135 The coordinated set of **actions** involving the efforts of two or more **actors** to achieve an effect.
- 1136 Note that the effect of a joint action is *not* always equivalent to one or more effects of the individual
- 1137 actions of the actors involved, i.e., it may be more than the sum of the parts.
- 1138 Different perspectives lead to either communication or joint action as being considered most important.
- For example, from the perspective of ecosystem security, the integrity of the communications may be dominant; from the perspective of ecosystem governance, the integrity of the joint action may be
- 1140 dominant, nom the perspect

1142 3.3.3 State and Shared State

1143 State

- 1144 The condition of an entity at a particular time.
- 1145 State is characterized by a set of facts that is true of the entity. In principle, the total state of an entity (or 1146 the world as a whole) is unbounded. In practice, we are concerned only with a subset of the state of an 1147 entity that is measurable and useful in a given context.
- 1148 For example, the total state of a light bulb includes the temperature of the filament of the bulb, the
- 1149 composition of the glass, the dirt that is on the bulb's surface and so on. However, someone needing
- 1150 more light to read is only interested in whether the bulb is 'on' or 'off' and if it is working properly. That 1151 individual's characterization of the state of the bulb reduces to the fact: "bulb is now on".
- 1152 In a SOA ecosystem, there is a distinction between the set of facts about an entity that only that entity can
- 1153 access and the set of facts that may be accessible to others, notably actors in the SOA-based system.

1154 Private State

- 1155 That part of an entity's **state** that is knowable by, and accessible to, only that entity.
- 1156 Shared State

1157

- That part of an entity's **state** that is knowable by, and may be accessible to, other actors.
- 1158 Note that shared state does not imply that the state *is* accessible to other actors. It simply refers to that 1159 subset of state that *may* be accessed by other actors. This will principally be the case when actors need
- 1160 to participate in joint actions.
- 1161 It is the aggregation of the shared states of pertinent entities that constitutes the desired effect of a joint
- action. Thus the change to this shared state is what is experienced in the wider ecosystem as a real world effect

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 37 of 115 **Comment [PFB14]:** Issue #313 - 10

1164 3.4 Architectural Implications

1165 3.4.1 Social structures

1166 A SOA ecosystem's participants are organized into various forms of social structure. Not all social 1167 structures are hierarchical: a SOA ecosystem SHOULD be able to incorporate peer-to-peer forms of 1168 organization as well as hierarchic structures. In addition, it SHOULD be possible to identify and manage any constitutional agreements that define the social structures present in a SOA ecosystem. 1169 1170 Different social structures have different rules of engagement but predictable behavior is one of the underpinnings of trust. Mechanisms MUST therefore be available to: 1171 express constitutions and other organizing principles of participants; 1172 0 inherit rules of engagement from parent to child social structures. 1173 0 Social structures have roles and members and this impacts who may be authorized to act and in 1174 1175 what circumstances. Mechanisms **MUST** be available to: identify and manage members of social structures 1176 0 Identify and manage attributes of the members 1177 0 describe roles and role adoption 1178 \circ 1179 Social structures overlap and interact, giving rise to situations in which rules of engagement may 1180 conflict. In addition, a given actor may be a member of multiple social structures and the social 1181 structures may be associated with different jurisdictions. Mechanisms **MUST** be available to: identify the social structures that are active during a series of joint actions; 1182 0 1183 0 identify and resolve conflicts and inconsistencies. 1184 3.4.2 Resource and Ownership 1185 Communication about and between, visibility into, and leveraging of resources requires the unambiguous identification of those resources. Mechanisms MUST be available for: 1186 1187 Assigning and guaranteeing uniqueness of globally unique identifiers Identifying the extent of the enterprise over which the identifier must be understandable and 1188 1189 unique 1190 Ensuring the longevity of identifiers (i.e., they cannot just change arbitrarily) . 3.4.3 Policies and Contracts 1191 Policies are expressed as constraints: 1192 Policies MUST be expressed 1193 0 1194 0 Constraints **MUST** be enforceable Management of potentially large numbers of policies MUST be achievable 1195 0 1196 Policies have owners: Policies SHOULD be established by social structures. 1197 0 1198 Policies may not be consistent with one another: Policy conflict resolution techniques MUST exist and be in place 1199 1200 Agreements are accepted constraints: Contracts **SHOULD** be enforced by mechanisms of the social structure 1201 0 1202 3.4.4 Communications as a Means of Mediating Action 1203 Using message exchange for mediating action implies 1204 The structure of messages **MUST** be validated by: 1205 Identifying the syntax of the message; 0 1206 Identifying the vocabularies used in the communication 0 1207 Identifying the higher-level structure of the communication, such as policy assertion, 0 1208 contract enforcement, etc. 1209 A principal objective of communication is to mediate action, therefore: 1210 Messages SHOULD convey actions and events

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 38 of 115

1211	 Receiving a message is an action, but is not the same action as the action conveyed by
1212	the message
1213	 Actions are associated with objectives of the actors involved
1214	 Explicit representation of objectives may facilitate automated processing of
1215	messages
1010	

1216 o An actor agreeing to adopt an objective becomes responsible for that objective

1217 3.4.5 Semantics

1218 Semantics is pervasive in a SOA ecosystem. There are many forms of utterance that are relevant to the 1219 ecosystem: apart from communicated content there are mission and policy statements, goals, objectives,

- 1220 descriptions, and agreements which are all forms of utterance.
- 1221 The operation of the SOA ecosystem is significantly enhanced if
- A careful distinction is made between public semantics and private semantics. In particular, it
 MUST be possible for actors to process content such as communications, descriptions and policies solely on the basis of the public semantics of those utterances.
- A well founded semantics **MUST** ensure that any assertions essential to the operator of the ecosystem (such as policy statements, and descriptions) have carefully chosen written expressions and associated decision procedures.
- The role of vocabularies as a focal point for multiple actors to be able to understand each other is critical. While no two actors can fully share their interpretation of elements of vocabularies, they
 SHOULD be able to understand the intended public meaning of vocabularies' elements.

1231 3.4.6 Trust and Risk

- 1232 In traditional systems, the balance between trust and risk is achieved by severely restricting interactions1233 and by controlling the participants of a system.
- 1234 Actors **MUST** be able to explicitly reason about both trust and risk in order to effectively participate in a
- 1235 SOA ecosystem. The more open and public the SOA ecosystem is, the more important it is for actors to 1236 be able to reason about their participation.

1237 3.4.7 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities

- 1238 In the process of capturing needs as requirements, and the subsequent processes of requirements
 1239 decomposition and allocation of requirements processes need to be informed by capabilities that already
 1240 exist.
 - Architecture **MUST** take into account existing capabilities available as services

1242 3.4.8 The Importance of Action

- 1243 Participants participate in a SOA ecosystem in order to have their needs met. This involves action; both
- 1244 individual actions and joint actions.

1241

1247

1248

1245 Any architectural realization of a SOA ecosystem **SHOULD** address:

- How actions are modeled:
 - Identifying the performer or agent of the action;
 - the target of the action; and the
- 1249 o verb of the action.
- 1250 Any explicit models of joint action **SHOULD** take into account
- The possible compositions that define the joint action.
- 1252 The potential for multiple joint actions to be layered on top of each other

Comment [PFB15]: Issue #313 - 11

1253 4 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view

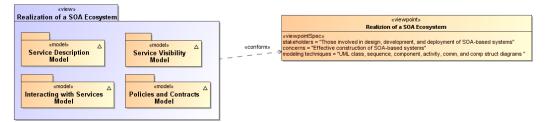
1254

1255

1256

Make everything as simple as possible but no simpler. Albert Einstein

- 1257 The *Realization of a SOA Ecosystem* view focuses on elements that are needed to support the discovery 1258 of and interaction with services. The key questions asked are "What are services, what support is needed 1259 and how are they realized?"
- 1260 The models in this view include the Service Description Model, the Service Visibility Model, the Interacting 1261 with Services Model, and the Policies and Contracts Model.



1262 1263

Figure 13 - Model Elements Described in the Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view

1264 The Service Description Model informs the participants of what services exist and the conditions under 1265 which they can be used. The Policies and Contracts Model elaborates on the conditions under which 1266 service use is prescribed and agreements among participants in the SOA ecosystem. The information in 1267 the service description as augmented by details of policy provides the basis for visibility as defined in the 1268 SOA Reference Model and captured in the Service Visibility Model. Finally, the process by which services 1269 are used under the defined conditions and agreements is described in the Interacting with Services 1270 Model.

1271 4.1 Service Description Model

1272 A service description is an artifact, often document-based, that defines or references the information 1273 needed to use, deploy, manage and otherwise control a service. This includes not only the information 1274 and behavior models associated with a service that define interaction via the service interface but also 1275 includes information needed to decide whether the service is appropriate for the current requirements of 1276 the service consumer. Thus, the service description should also include information such as service 1277 reachability, service functionality, and the policies associated with a service.

A service description artifact may be a single document or it may be an interlinked set of documents. For
 the purposes of this model, differences in representation are to be ignored, but the implications of a 'web
 of documents' are discussed later in this section.

- 1281 There are several points to note regarding service description:
- The Reference Model states that one of the hallmarks of SOA is the large amount of associated description. The model presented below focuses on the description of services but it is equally important to consider the descriptions of the consumer, other participants, and needed resources other than services.
- Descriptions are inherently incomplete but may be determined as *sufficient* when it is possible for the participants to access and use the described services based only on the descriptions provided. This means that, at one end of the spectrum, a description along the lines of "That service on that machine" may be sufficient for the intended audience. On the other extreme, a service description with a machine-process-able description of the semantics of its operations

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 40 of 115 and real world effects may be required for services accessed via automated service discoveryand planning systems.

- 1293 Descriptions come with context, i.e. a given description comprises information needed to 1294 adequately support the context. For example, a list of items can define a version of a service, but 1295 for many contexts an indicated version number is sufficient without the detailed list. The current model focuses on the description needed by a service consumer to understand what the service 1296 1297 does, under what conditions the service will do it, how well the service does it, and what steps are 1298 needed by the consumer to initiate and complete a service interaction. Such information also 1299 enables the service provider to clearly specify what is being provided and the intended conditions 1300 of use.
- Descriptions change over time as, for example, the ingredients and nutrition information for food labeling continues to evolve. A need for transparency of transactions may require additional description for those associated contexts.
- Description always proceeds from a basis of what is considered 'common knowledge'. This may be social conventions that are commonly expected or possibly codified in law. It is impossible to describe everything and it can be expected that a mechanism as far reaching as SOA will also connect entities where there is inconsistent 'common' knowledge.
- Descriptions become the collection point of information related to a service or any other resource, but it is not necessarily the originating point or the motivation for generating this information. In particular, given a SOA service as the access to an underlying capability, the service may point to some of the capability's previously generated description, e.g. a service providing access to a data store may also have access to information indicating the freshness of the data.
- 1313 These points emphasize that there is no one 'right' description for all contexts and for all time. Several 1314 descriptions for the same subject may exist at the same time, and this emphasizes the importance of the 1315 description referencing source material maintained by that material's owner rather than having multiple 1316 copies that become out of synch and inconsistent.
- 1317 It may also prove useful for a description assembled for one context to cross-reference description
 1318 assembled for another context as a way of referencing ancillary information without overburdening any
- single description. Rather than a single artifact, description can be thought of as a web of documents that
 enhance the total available description.
- 1321 This Reference Architecture Foundation uses the term service description for consistency with the
- 1322 concept defined in the Reference Model. Some SOA literature treats the idea of a 'service contract' as
- 1323 equivalent to service description. In the SOA-RAF, the term service description is preferred. Replacing the
- term 'service description' with the term 'service contract' implies that just one side of the interaction is
- governing and misses the point that a single set of policies identified by a service description may lead to
- 1326 numerous contracts, i.e. service level agreements, leveraging the same description.

1327 4.1.1 The Model for Service Description

1328Figure 14 shows Service Description as a subclass of the general Description class. As well as describing1329a Resource (as we saw in Section 3.2.4.1), a Description is also a subclass of the Resource class. In1330addition, each resource is assumed to have a description 5^{5} . The following section discusses the1331relationships among elements of general description and the subsequent sections focus on service1332description. Other descriptions, such as those of participants, are important to SOA but are not

1333 individually elaborated in this document.

1334 4.1.1.1 Elements Common to General Description

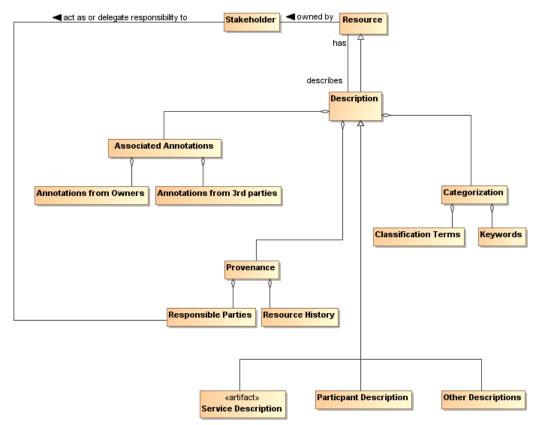
- 1335 The general Description class is composed of a number of elements that are expected to be common 1336 among all descriptions supporting a service oriented architecture. A registry/repository often contains a 1337 subset of the description instance, where the chosen subset is identified as that which facilitates
 - subset of the description instance, where the chosen subset is identified as that which facilitates

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

⁵ The description itself can have further descriptive data such as its version or last revision. The model emphasizes this point but should not be interpreted too rigorously as allowing endless recursion.

discovery. Additional information contained in a more complete description may be needed to initiate andcontinue interaction.

1339 1340



1341 1342

Figure 14 - General Description

1343 4.1.1.1.1 Provenance

1344 While the resource Identifier provides the means to know which subject and subject description are being

1345 considered, Provenance as related to the Description class provides information that reflects on the

quality or usability of the subject. Provenance specifically identifies the stakeholder (human, defined role, organization, etc.) who assumes responsibility for the resource being described and tracks historic

- 1348 information that establishes a context for understanding what the resource provides and how it has
- 1349 changed over time. Responsibilities may be directly assumed by the stakeholder who owns a resource
- (see Section 3.2.4.2) or the Owner may designate Responsible Parties for the various aspects of
- 1351 maintaining the resource and provisioning it for use by others. There may be more than one stakeholder
- 1352 identified under Responsible Parties; for example, one stakeholder may be responsible for code
- 1353 maintenance while another is responsible for provisioning of the executable code.

1354 4.1.1.1.2 Keywords and Classification Terms

1355 A traditional element of description has been to associate the resource being described with predefined

- 1356 keywords or classification taxonomies that derive from referenceable formal definitions and vocabularies.
- 1357 This Reference Architecture Foundation does not prescribe which vocabularies or taxonomies may be 1358 referenced, nor does it limit the number of keywords or classifications that may be associated with the

resource. It does, however, state that a normative definition of any terms or keywords SHOULD be

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 42 of 115

1360 referenced, whether that be a representation in a formal ontology language, a pointer to an online

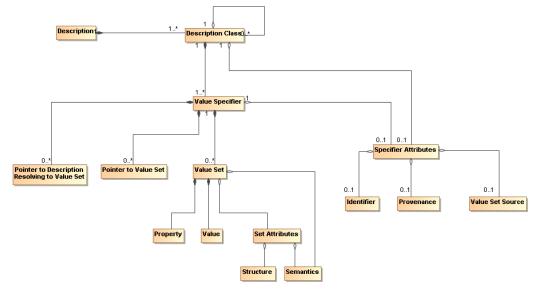
1361 dictionary, or any other accessible source. See Section 4.1.1.2 for further discussion on associating 1362 semantics with assigned values.

4.1.1.1.3 Associated Annotations 1363

1364 The general description instance may also reference associated documentation that is in addition to that 1365 considered necessary in this model. For example, the owner of a service may have documentation on 1366 best practices for using the service. Alternately, a third party may certify a service based on their own 1367 criteria and certification process; this may be vital information to other prospective consumers if they were willing to accept the certification in lieu of having to perform another certification themselves. Note, while 1368 1369 the examples of Associated Documentation presented here are related to services, the concept applies

1370 equally to description of other entities.

1371 4.1.1.2 Assigning Values to Description Instances



1372 1373

1386

1387

1374 Figure 14 shows the template for a general description, but individual description instances depend on the ability to associate meaningful values with the identified elements. Figure 15 shows a model for a 1375 1376 collection of information that provides for value assignment and traceability for both the meaning and the 1377 source of a value. The model is not meant to replace existing or future schema or other structures that have or will be defined for specific implementations, but it is meant as guidance for the information such 1378 structures need to capture to generate sufficient description. It is expected that tools will be developed to 1379 1380 assist the user-actor in populating description and auto-filling many of these fields, and in that context, 1381 this model provides guidance to the tool developers.

1382 In Figure 15, each class has an associated value specifier or is made up of components that eventually

- 1383 resolve to a value specifier. For example, Description has several components, one of which is
- Categorization, which would have an associated value specifier. 1384
- 1385 A value specifier consists of

soa-ra-

Standa

- a collection of value sets with associated property-value pairs, pointers to such value sets, or pointers to descriptions that eventually resolve to value sets that describe the component; and
- attributes that qualify the value specifier and the value sets it contains. 1388

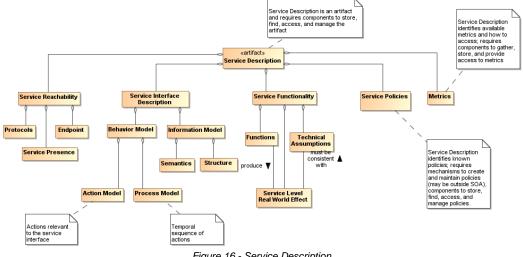
The qualifying attributes for the value specifier include 1389

-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
ards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 43 of 115

Comment [PFB16]: Issue #312 - 4

Figure 15 - Representation of a Description

- 1390 an optional identifier that would allow the value set to be defined, accessed, and reused 1391 elsewhere:
- 1392 provenance information that identifies the person (individual or organization) who has responsibility for assigning the value sets to any description component; 1393
 - an optional source of the value set, if appropriate and meaningful, e.g. if a particular data source is mandated.
- 1396 If the value specifier is contained within a higher-level component (such as Service Description containing Service Functionality), the component may assume values from the attributes of its container. 1397
- 1398 Note, provenance as a qualifying attribute of a value specifier is different from provenance as part of an instance of Description. Provenance for a service identifies those who own and are responsible for the 1399 1400 service, as described in Section 3.2.4. Provenance for a value specifier identifies who is responsible for choosing and assigning values to the value sets that comprise the value specifier. It is assumed that 1401 granularity at the value specifier level is sufficient and provenance is not required for each value set. 1402
- 1403 The value set also has attributes that define its structure and semantics.
- 1404 The semantics of the value set property should be associated with a semantic context conveying 1405 the meaning of the property within the execution context, where the semantic context could vary 1406 from a free text definition to a formal ontology.
- 1407 For numeric values, the structure would provide the numeric format of the value and the 1408 'semantics' would be conveyed by a dimensional unit with an identifier to an authoritative source 1409 defining the dimensional unit and preferred mechanisms for its conversion to other dimensional 1410 units of like type.
- For nonnumeric values, the structure would provide the data structure for the value 1411 • representation and the semantics would be an associated semantic model. 1412 1413
 - For pointers, architectural guidelines would define the preferred addressing scheme.
- 1414 The value specifier may indicate a default semantic model for its component value sets and the individual value sets may provide an override. 1415
- 1416 The property-value pair construct is introduced for the value set to emphasize the need to identify
- unambiguously both what is being specified and what is a consistent associated value. The further 1417
- qualifying of Structure and Semantics in the Set Attributes allows for flexibility in defining the form of the 1418
- associated values. 1419



4.1.1.3 Model Elements Specific to Service Description 1420



1437

1438

1439

Figure 16 - Service Description

1423 The major elements for the Service Description subclass follow directly from the areas discussed in the 1424 Reference Model. Here, we discuss the detail shown in Figure 16 and the purpose served by each 1425 element of service description. For example, Service Policies as included in Figure 16 indicate those

1426 policies that affect conditions of use of the service; however, while the description may link to detailed

policy documents, it is not the purpose of description to justify or elaborate on the rationale for the 1427

1428 policies. Similarly, Service Interface Description as included in Figure 16 captures information about what

interactions are supported by the service via its Behavior Model and the information exchange needed to 1429

1430 carry out those interactions in accordance with the service's Information Model; it is not the coded 1431 interface

1432 Note, the intent in the subsections that follow is to describe how a particular element, such as the service 1433 interface description, is reflected in the service description, not to elaborate on the details of that element.

4.1.1.3.1 Service Interface Description 1434

1435 As noted in the Reference Model, the service interface is the means for interacting with a service. For the 1436 SOA-RAF and as shown in Section 4.3 the service interface supports an exchange of messages, where

- the message conforms to a referenceable message exchange pattern (MEP, covered below in Section 4.3.3.1).
- the message payload conforms to the structure and semantics of the indicated information model, .
- 1440 the messages are used to denote events related to or actions against the service, where the actions are specified in the action model and any required sequencing of actions is specified in 1441 1442 the process model.
- The Service Interface Description element as shown in Figure 17 includes the information needed to carry 1443 1444 out this message exchange in order to realize the service behavior described. In addition to the
- 1445 Information Model that conveys the Semantics and Structure of the message, the Service Interface
- 1446 Description indicates what behavior can be expected through interactions conveyed in the Action and 1447 Process Models.

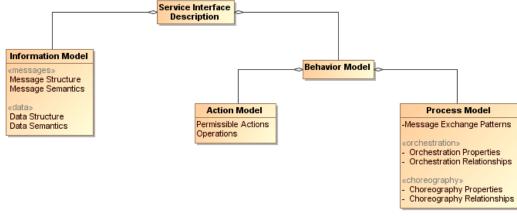


Figure 17 - Service Interface Description

- Note we distinguish the structure and semantics of the message from that of the underlying **protocol** that
- 1451 conveys the message. The message structure may include nested structures that are independently1452 defined, such as an enclosing envelope structure and an enclosed data structure.
- 1453 These aspects of messages are discussed in more detail in Section 4.3.2.

1454 4.1.1.3.2 Service Reachability

- 1455 Service reachability, as modeled in Section 4.2.2.3 enables service participants to locate and interact with
- one another. To support service reachability, the service description should indicate the endpoints (also
 modeled and defined in that section) to which a service consumer can direct messages to invoke actions
- 1458 and the protocol to be used for message exchange using that endpoint.
- 1459 As generally applied to an action, the endpoint is the conceptual location where one applies an action; 1460 with respect to service description, it is the actual address where a message is sent.

1461 4.1.1.3.3 Service Functionality

1462 While the service interface and service reachability are concerned with the mechanics of using a service,

- service functionality and performance metrics (discussed in Section 4.1.1.3.4) describe what can be
- 1464 expected as a result of interacting with a service. Service Functionality, shown in *Figure 16* as part of the
- overall Service Description model and extended in Figure 18, is a clear expression of service function(s) and the real world effects of invoking the function. The Functions represent business activities in some
- 1467 domain that produce the desired real world effects.

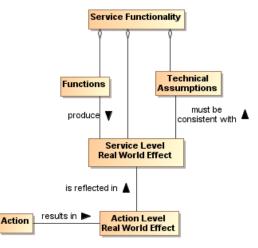


Figure 18 - Service Functionality

1470 The Service Functionality may also be limited by technical assumptions/constraints that underlie the effects that can result. Technical constraints are defined as domain specific restrictions and may express 1471

underlying physical limitations, such as flow speeds must be below sonic velocity or disk access that 1472

cannot be faster than the maximum for its host drive. Technical constraints are related to the underlying 1473

capability accessed by the service. In any case, the real world effects must be consistent with the 1474

1475 technical assumptions/constraints.

1476 In Figure 16 and Figure 18, we specifically refer to the descriptions of Service Level and Action Level **Real World Effects.** 1477

1478 Service Level Real World Effect

1479 A specific change in the state or the information returned as a result of interacting with a service.

Action Level Real World Effect 1480

1481 A specific change in the state or the information returned as a result of interacting through a 1482 specific action.

1483 Service description describes the service as a whole while the component aspects should contribute to

1484 that whole. Thus, while individual Actions may contribute to the real world effects to be realized from

1485 interaction with the service, there would be a serious disconnect for Actions to contribute real world

effects that could not consistently be reflected in the Service Level Real World Effects and thus the 1486 Service Functionality. The relationship to Action Level Real World Effects and the implications on defining 1487

- 1488 the scope of a service are discussed in Section 4.1.2.1.
- 1489 Elements of Service Functionality may be expressed as natural language text, reference an existing taxonomy of functions or other formal model. 1490

1491 4.1.1.3.4 Service Policies, Metrics, and Compliance Records

- 1492 Policies prescribe the conditions and constraints for interacting with a service and impact the willingness
- to continue visibility with the other participants. Whereas technical constraints are statements of 'physical' 1493
- fact, policies are subjective assertions made by the service provider (sometimes as passed on from 1494
- 1495 higher authorities).
- 1496 The service description provides a central location for identifying what policies have been asserted by the 1497 service provider. The specific representation of the policy, e.g. in some formal policy language, is outside of the service description. The service description would reference the normative definition of the policy.
- 1498
- 1499 Policies may also be asserted by other participants, as illustrated by the model shown in Figure 19.
- 1500 Policies that are generally applicable to any interaction with the service are asserted by the service 1501 provider and included in the Service Policies section of the service description.

Edits to CSPRD03 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 47 of 115

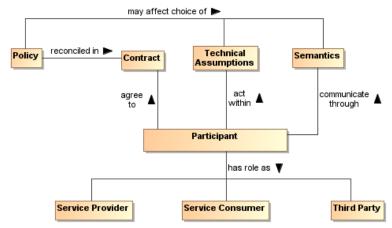


Figure 19 - Model for Policies and Contracts as related to Service Participants

In *Figure 19*, we specifically refer to policies at the service level. In a similar manner to that discussed for Service Level vs. Action Level Real World Effects in Section 4.1.1.3.3, individual Actions may have associated policies stating conditions for performing the action, but these must be reflected in and be consistent with the policies made visible at the service level and thus the description of the service as a whole. The relationship to Action Level Policies and the implications on defining the scope of a service are discussed in Section 4.1.2.1.

1509 are discussed in Section 4.1.2.1.

As noted in *Figure 19*, the policies asserted may be reflected as Technical Assumptions/Constraints that available services or their underlying capabilities must be capable of meeting; it may similarly affect the semantics that can be used. For example of the former, there may be a policy that specifies the surge capacity to be accommodated by a server, but a service that is not designed to make use of the larger

1514 server capacity would not satisfy the intent of the policy and would not be appropriate to use. For the

1515 latter, a policy may require that only services that support interaction via a community-sponsored

1516 vocabulary can be used.

1517 Contracts are agreements among the participants. The contract may reconcile inconsistent policies
1518 asserted by the participants or may specify details of the interaction. Service level agreements (SLAs) are
1519 one of the commonly used categories of contracts.

1520 The definition and later enforcement of policies and contracts are predicated on the potential for

measurement; the relationships among the relevant concepts are shown in the model in *Figure 20*.

Performance Metrics identify quantities that characterize the speed and quality of realizing the real world

effects produced using the SOA service; in addition, policies and contracts may depend on

1524 nonperformance metrics, such as whether a license is in place to use the service. Some of these metrics 1525 may reflect the underlying capability, some metrics may reflect processing of the SOA service, and some

1525 may reflect the underlying capability, some metrics may reflect processing of the SOA service, and some 1526 metrics may include expected network overhead. The metrics should be carefully defined to avoid

1527 confusion in exactly what is being reported, for example, a case where the service processing time is

reported as if it were the total time including the capability and network processing but is only measuring

1520 The service processing.

02 November 2012 Page 48 of 115

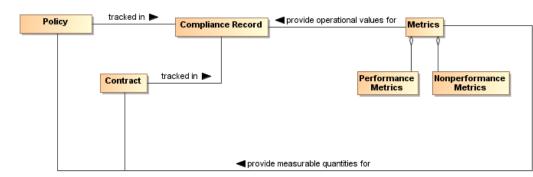


Figure 20 - Policies and Contracts, Metrics, and Compliance Records

1533 As with many quantities, the metrics associated with a service are not themselves defined by this Service

1534 Description Model because it is not known *a priori* which metrics are being collected or otherwise checked 1535 by the services, the SOA infrastructure, or other resources that participate in the SOA interactions.

However, the service description SHOULD provide a placeholder (possibly through a link to an externally

1537 compiled list) for identifying which metrics are available and how these can be accessed.

1538 The use of metrics to evaluate compliance and the results of compliance evaluation SHOULD be

1539 maintained in compliance records and the means to access the compliance records MAY be included in

the Service Policies portion of the service description. For example, the description may be in the form of static information (e.g. over the first year of operation, this service had a 91% availability), a link to a

dynamically generated metric (e.g. over the past 30 days, the service has had a 93.3% availability), or

access to a dynamic means to check the service for current availability (e.g., a ping). The relationship

between service **presence** and the presence of the individual actions that can be invoked is discussed under Reachability in Section 4.2.2.3.

1546 Note, even when policies relate to the perspective of a single participant, policy compliance can be

mode, even when policies relate to the perspective of a single participant, policy compliance can be measured and policies may be enforceable without contractual agreement with other participants. While

1548 certain elements of contracts and contract compliance are likely private, public aspects of compliance

should be reflected in the compliance record information referenced in the service description. This

provides input to evidence that supports determining willingness as described in Section 3.2.5.1.

1551 **4.1.2 Use of Service Description**

1552 **4.1.2.1 Service Description in support of Service Interaction**

1553 If we assume we have awareness, the service participants must still establish willingness and presence to

ensure full visibility (See Section 4.2) and to interact with the service. Service description provides

1555 necessary information for many aspects of preparing for and carrying through with interaction. Recall the 1556 fundamental definition of a SOA service as a mechanism to access an underlying capability; the service

description describes this mechanism and its use. It lays the groundwork for what can occur, whereas

service interaction comprises the specifics through which real-world effects are realized.

1530

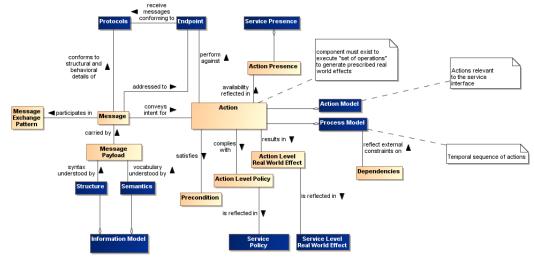


Figure 21 - Relationship between Action and Components of Service Description Model

Figure 21 combines the models in the subsections of Section 4.1.1 to concisely relate action and the

relevant components of the Service Description model. The purpose of *Figure 21* is to demonstrate that the components of service description go beyond arbitrary documentation and form the critical set of

information needed to define the what and how of action. In *Figure 21*, the leaf nodes from *Figure 16* are
 shown in blue.

Action is typically invoked via a Message where the structure and processing details of the message conform to an identified Protocol and is directed to the address of the identified endpoint, and the message payload conforms to the service Information Model.

1569 The availability of an action is reflected in the Action Presence and each Action Presence contributes to

the overall Service Presence; this is discussed further in Section 4.2.2.3. Each action has its own
 endpoint and protocols are associated with the endpoint⁶. The endpoint and service presence are also
 part of the service description.

1573 An action may have preconditions where a Precondition is something that must be in place before an 1574 action can occur, e.g. confirmation of a precursor action. Whether preconditions are satisfied is evaluated

1575 when an actor tries to perform the action and not before. Presence for an action means an actor can 1576 initiate it and is independent of whether the preconditions are satisfied. However, the successful

1577 completion of the action may depend on whether its preconditions were satisfied. The service as a whole

1578 may provide fallback if a precondition is not met, and the service description may indicate functionality

1579 without explicitly containing details of how preconditions are satisfied or otherwise mitigated.

Analogous to the relationship between actions and preconditions, the Process Model may imply 1580 1581 Dependencies for succeeding steps in a process, e.g. that a previous step has successfully completed, or may be isolated to a given step. An example of the latter would be a dependency that the host server has 1582 1583 scheduled maintenance and access attempts at these times would fail. Dependencies related to the 1584 process model do not affect the presence of a service although these may affect whether the business 1585 function successfully completes. The service as a whole may provide fallback if a dependency is not met, 1586 and the service description may indicate functionality without explicitly containing details of how 1587 dependencies are satisfied or otherwise mitigated.

The conditions under which an action can be invoked may depend on policies associated with the action.
The Action Level Policies must be reflected in (or subsumed by) the Service Policies because such

⁶ This is analogous to a WSDL 2.0 interface operation (WSDL 1.1 portType) having one or more defined bindings and the service identifies the endpoints (WSDL 1.1 ports) corresponding to the bindings.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 50 of 115 1590 policies may be critical to determining whether the conditions for use of the service are consistent with the

1591 policies asserted by the service consumer. For example, if an action requires interaction with another

service and that other service has licensing requirements, then the service with such an action also has the same requirement. The Service Policies are included in the service description.

1594 Similarly, the result of invoking an action is one or more real world effects, and any Action Level Real

1595 World Effects must be reflected in the Service Level Real World Effect included in the service description.

1596 The unambiguous expression of action level policies and real world effects as service counterparts is 1597 necessary to adequately describe what constitutes the service interaction. For example, if an action

allows for the tracking of user customer preferences, then the service with such an action results in the
 same real world effect.

1600 An adequate service description must provide a consumer with information needed to determine if the 1601 service policies, the (business) functions, and service-level real world effects are of interest, and there is 1602 nothing in the technical constraints that preclude use of the service.

1603 Note at the service level, the business functions are not concerned with the action or process models.1604 These models are detailed separately.

1605 The service description is not intended to be isolated documentation but rather an integral part of service

use. Changes in service description should immediately be made known to consumers and potential
 consumers.

1608 4.1.2.2 Description and Invoking Actions Against a Service

At this point, let us assume the descriptions were sufficient to establish willingness; see Section 4.2.2.2.
 Figure 21 indicates the service endpoint establishes where to actually carry out the interaction. This is

1611 where we start considering the action and process models.

1612The action model identifies the multiple actions an actor-user can perform against a service and the1613actor-user would perform these in the context of the process model as specified or referenced under the1614Service Interface Description portion of Service Description. For a given business function, there is a1615corresponding process model, where any process model may involve multiple actions. From the above1616discussion of model elements of description we may conclude (1) actions have reachability information,

1617 including endpoint and presence, (2) presence of service is some aggregation of presence of its actions,

(3) action preconditions and service dependencies do not affect presence although these may affectsuccessful completion.

Having established visibility, the interaction can proceed. Given a business function, the consumer knows
what will be accomplished (the service functionality), the conditions under which interaction will proceed
(service policies), and the process that must be followed (the process model). The remaining question is
how the description information for structure and semantics enable interaction.

1624 We have established the importance of the process model in identifying relevant actions and their 1625 sequence. Interaction proceeds through messages and thus it is the syntax and semantics of the

- 1625 sequence. Interaction proceeds through messages and thus it is the syntax and semantics of the 1626 messages with which we are here concerned. A common approach is to define the structure and
- 1627 semantics that can appear as part of a message; then assemble the pieces into messages; and,
- 1628 associate messages with actions. Actions make use of structure and semantics as defined in the
- 1629 information model to describe its legal messages.

1630 The process model identifies actions to be performed against a service and the sequence for performing

1631 the actions. For a given action, the Reachability portion of description indicates the protocol bindings that

- 1632 are available, the endpoint corresponding to a binding, and whether there is presence at that endpoint. An
- 1633 interaction is through the exchange of messages that conform to the structure and semantics defined in

the information model and the message sequence conforming to the action's identified MEP. The result is

- some portion of the real world effect that must be assessed and/or processed (e.g. if an error exists, that
- 1636 part that covers the error processing would be invoked).

1637 4.1.2.3 The Question of Multiple Business Functions

Action level effects and policies must be reflected at the service level for service description to supportvisibility.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 51 of 115 **Comment [PFB17]:** Issue #312 - 5

Comment [PFB18]: Issue #312 - 6 Comment [PFB19]: Issue #312 - 6 1640 It is assumed that a SOA service represents an identifiable business function to which policies can be 1641 applied and from which desired business effects can be obtained. While contemporary discussions of 1642 SOA services and supporting standards do not constrain what actions or combinations of actions can or

SOA services and supporting standards do not constrain what actions or combinations of actions can or
 should be defined for a service, the SOA-RAF considers the implications of service description in defining
 the range of actions appropriate for an individual SOA service.

1645 Consider the situation if a given SOA service is the mechanism for access to multiple independent (but loosely related) business functions. These are not multiple effects from a single function but multiple 1646 1647 functions with potentially different sets of effects for each function. A service can have multiple actions 1648 that an actoruser may perform against it, and this does not change with multiple business functions. As an individual business function corresponds to a process model, so multiple business functions imply 1649 multiple process models. The same action may be used in multiple process models but the aggregated 1650 1651 service presence would be specific to each business function because the components being aggregated 1652 may be different between process models. In summary, for a service with multiple business functions, 1653 each function has (1) its own process model and dependencies, (2) its own aggregated presence, and (3) 1654 possibly its own list of policies and real world effects.

A common variation on this theme is for a single service to have multiple endpoints for different levels of quality of service (QoS), e.g. Gold, Silver, and Bronze. Different QoS imply separate statements of policy, separate endpoints, possibly separate dependencies, and so on. One could say the QoS variation does not require this because there can be a single QoS policy that encompasses the variations, and all other aspects of the service would be the same except for the endpoint used for each QoS. However, the different aspects of policy at the service level would need to be mapped to endpoints, and this introduces an undesirable level of coupling across the elements of description. In addition, it is obvious that

description at the service level can become very complicated if the number of combinations is allowed to
 grow.

1664 One could imagine a service description that is basically a container for action descriptions, where each 1665 action description is self-contained; however, this would lead to duplication of description components 1666 across actions. If common description components are factored, this either is limited to components 1667 common across all actions or requires complicated tagging to capture the components that often but do

1667 common across all actions or requires complicated tagging to capture the components that often but do1668 not universally apply.

1669 If a provider cannot describe a service as a whole but must describe every action, this leads to the

1670 situation where it may be extremely difficult to construct a clear and concise service description that can 1671 effectively support discovery and use without tedious logic to process the description and assemble the available permutations. In effect, if adequate description of an action begins to look like description of a

1673 service, it may be best to have it as a separate service.

1674 Recall, more than one service can access the same underlying capability, and this is appropriate if a 1675 different real world effect is to be exposed. Along these lines, one can argue that different QoS are 1676 different services because getting a response in one minute rather than one hour is more than a QoS

1677 difference; it is a fundamental difference in the business function being provided.

As a best practice, the criterion for whether a service is appropriately scoped may be the ease or difficulty in creating an unambiguous service description. A consequence of having tightly-scoped services is there will likely be a greater reliance on combining services, i.e. more fundamental business functions, to create more advanced business functions. This is consistent with the principles of service oriented architecture and is the basic position of this Reference Architecture Foundation, although not an absolute requirement. Combining services increases the reliance on understanding and implementing the concepts of orchestration, choreography, and other approaches yet to be developed; these are discussed in more

1685 detail in section 4.4 Interacting with Services.

1686 4.1.2.4 Service Description, Execution Context, and Service Interaction

1687 The service description must provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the

1688 willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and

1689 consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other

- technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness. The
- 1691 agreements that encapsulate the necessary alignment form the basis upon which interactions may

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 52 of 115 **Comment [PFB20]:** Issue #312 - 7

1692 proceed - in the Reference Model, this collection of agreements and the necessary environmental

1693 support establish the execution context.

1694 To illustrate execution context of a service interaction, consider a Web-based system for timecard entry.

1695 For an employee onsite at an employer facility, the execution context requires a computer connected to

1696 the local network and the employee must enter their network ID and password. Relevant policies include

1697 that the employee must maintain the most recent anti-virus software and virus definitions for any

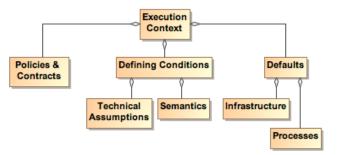
1698 computer connected to the network.

1699 For the same employee connecting from offsite, the execution context specifies the need for a computer 1700 with installed VPN software and a security token to negotiate the VPN connection. The execution context 1701 also includes proxy settings as needed to connect to the offsite network. The employee must still comply

1702 with the requirements for onsite computers and access, but the offsite execution context includes

1703 additional items before the employee can access the same underlying capability and realize the same

1704 real world effects, i.e. the timecard entries.



1705 1706

Figure 22 - Execution Context

1707 Figure 22 shows a few broad categories found in execution context. These are not meant to be

1708 comprehensive. Other items may need to be included to provide a sufficient description of the interaction conditions. Any other items not explicitly noted in the model but needed to set the environment SHOULD 1709 be included in the execution context.

1710

While the execution context captures the conditions under which interaction can occur, it does not capture 1711

the specific service invocations that do occur in a specific interaction. A service interaction as modeled in 1712

Figure 23 introduces the concept of an Interaction Description that is composed of both the Execution 1713

Context and an Interaction Log. The execution context specifies the set of conditions under which the 1714 1715 interaction occurs and the interaction log captures the sequence of service interactions that occur within

the execution context. This sequence should follow the Process Model but can include details beyond 1716

1717 those specified there. For example, the Process Model may specify an action that results in identifying a

data source, and the identified source is used in a subsequent action. The Interaction Log would record 1718

1719 the specific data source used.

1720 The execution context can be thought of as a container in which the interaction occurs and the interaction

1721 log captures what happens inside the container. This combination is needed to support auditability and repeatability of the interactions. 1722

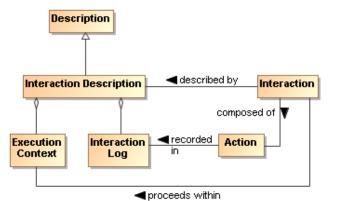


Figure 23 - Interaction Description

SOA allows flexibility to accomplish both repeatability and reusability. In facilitating reusability, a service
can be updated without disrupting the <u>user-customer</u> experience of the service. So, Google can improve
their ranking algorithm without notifying the <u>user-customer</u> about the details of the update.
However, it may also be vital for the consumer to be able to recreate past results or to generate

1729 rowever, it may also be wanted the consumer to be able to recreate past results or to generate1729 consistent results in the future, and information such as what conditions, which services, and which

- versions of those services were used is indispensible in retracing one's path. The interaction log is a critical part of the resulting real world effects because it defines how the effects were generated and
- critical part of the resulting real world effects because it defines how the effects were generated and
 possibly the meaning of observed effects. This increases in importance as dynamic composability
- becomes more feasible. In essence, a result has limited value if one does not know how it was generated.
- becomes more reasone. In essence, a result has innited value in one does not know now it was generate
- 1734 The interaction log SHOULD be a detailed trace for a specific interaction, and its reuse is limited to
- duplicating that interaction. An execution context can act as a template for identical or similar interactions.Any given execution context MAY define the conditions of future interactions.
- 1737 Such uses of execution context imply (1) a standardized format for capturing execution context and (2) a 1738 subclass of general description could be defined to support visibility of saved execution contexts. The
- 1739 specifics of the relevant formats and descriptions are beyond the scope of this document.
- 1740 A service description is unlikely to track interaction descriptions or the constituent execution contexts or

1741 interaction logs that include mention of the service. However, as appropriate, linking to specific instances

1742 of either of these could be done through associated annotations.

1743 4.1.3 Relationship to Other Description Models

1744 While the representation shown in *Figure 15* is derived from considerations related to service description, it

- 1745 is acknowledged that other metadata standards are relevant and should, as possible, be incorporated into
- this work. Two standards of particular relevance are the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI) [DCMI]
- 1747 and ISO 11179 **[ISO 11179]**, especially Part 5.
- 1748 When the service description (or even the general description class) is considered as the DCMI
- 1749 'resource', Figure 15 aligns nicely with the DCMI resource model. While some differences exist, these are
- mostly in areas where DCMI goes into detail that is considered beyond the scope of the current
- 1751 Reference Architecture Foundation. For example, DCMI defines classes of 'shared semantics' whereas 1752 this Reference Architecture Foundation considers that an identification of relevant semantic models is
- 1752 sufficient. Likewise, the DCMI Description Model goes into the details of possible syntax encodings
- 1754 whereas for the Reference Architecture Framework it is sufficient to identify the relevant formats.
- 1755 With respect to ISO 11179 Part 5, the metadata fields defined in that reference may be used without
- 1756 prejudice as the properties in *Figure 15*. Additionally, other defined metadata sets may be used by the
- 1757 service provider if the other sets are considered more appropriate, i.e. it is fundamental to this reference
- 1758 architecture to identify the need and the means to make vocabulary declarations explicit but it is beyond
- the scope to specify which vocabularies are to be used. In addition, the identification of domain of the

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Copyrigh

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 54 of 115

1	Comment - 8	[PFB21]:	Issue #312
1	Comment -8	[PFB22]:	Issue #312

- 1760 properties and range of the values has not been included in the current Reference Architecture
- 1761 discussion, but the text of ISO 11179 Part 5 can be used consistently with the model prescribed in this document
- 1762

1773

1811

- Description as defined here considers a wide range of applicability and support of the principles of service 1763
- 1764 oriented architecture. Other metadata models can be used in concert with the model presented here
- 1765 because most of these focus on a finer level of detail that is outside the present scope, and so provide a
- level of implementation guidance that can be applied as appropriate. 1766

4.1.4 Architectural Implications 1767

- The definition of service description has numerous architectural implications for the SOA ecosystem: 1768
- The real world effects that the service description definition support must be consistent with the 1769 technical assumptions/constraints. In particular, any Action Level Real World Effect MUST be 1770 reflected in the Service Level Real World Effect included in the sedcription. 1771
 - The service description definition changes over time and its contents will reflect changing . requirements and context. The service description definition **MUST** therefore have: mechanisms to support the storage referencing, and access to normative definitions of

1115		requirements and context. The service description deminition MOST therefore have.
1774		 mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to normative definitions of
1775		one or more versioning schemes that may be applied to identify different aggregations of
1776		descriptive information, where the different schemes may be versions of a versioning
1777		scheme itself;
1778		 configuration management mechanisms to capture the contents of each aggregation and
1779		apply a unique identifier in a manner consistent with an identified versioning scheme;
1780		 one or more mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to conversion
1781		relationships between versioning schemes, and the mechanisms to carry out such
1782		conversions.
1783	•	Description makes use of defined semantics, where the semantics MAY be used for
1784 1785		categorization or providing other property and value information for description classes. In such cases, the service description MUST have:
1786		 semantic models that provide normative descriptions of the utilized terms, where the
1787		models may range from a simple dictionary of terms to an ontology showing complex
1788		relationships and capable of supporting enhanced reasoning;
1789		 mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to these semantic models;
1790		 configuration management mechanisms to capture the normative description of each
1791		semantic model and to apply a unique identifier in a manner consistent with an identified
1792		versioning scheme;
1793		 one or more mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to conversion
1794		relationships between semantic models, and the mechanisms to carry out such
1795		conversions.
1796	•	Once awareness exists, the service participants MUST still establish willingness and presence to
1797		ensure full visibility (See Section 4.2).
1798	•	The Service Description MUST provide a consumer with information needed to: determine the
1799		service functionality; the conditions under which interaction can proceed (service policies and
1800		process model); the intended Service Level Real World Effects; any technical constraints that
1801		might preclude use of the service.
1802	•	Changes in Service Description SHOULD be made available immediately to actual and potential
1803		consumers.
1804	•	Actions MAY have associated policies stating conditions for performing the action, but these
1805		MUST be reflected in and be consistent with the policies made visible at the service level and
1806		thus the description of the service as a whole.
1807	•	Policies asserted MAY be reflected as Technical Assumptions/Constraints that available services
1808		or their underlying capabilities MUST be capable of meeting.
1809	•	Descriptions include reference to policies defining conditions of use. In this sense, policies are
1810		also resources that need to be visible, discoverable, and accessible. The service description (as

also resources that need to be visible, discoverable, and accessible. The service description (as also enumerated under governance) MUST have:

 description of policies, including a unique identifier for the policy and a sufficient. preferably machine processable, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe the policy, its functions, and its effects: a method to enable scarching for policies that best meet the search criteria specified by the service participant; where the discovery mechanism has access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism; a accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; micrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; mechanisms to callung and mable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have; o endor more mechanisms to capture, describe, into and subjects on the accesses; o endor more mechanisms for attaching observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description identified metraction descriptions; o endor more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and represtability. Hereby establishing a context or results and support for understanding; o tools to facilitate identifying description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description; tools to facilitate identifying description is an subject for description definition fuels			
 the policy, its functions, and its effects: a method to enable searching for policies that best meet the search criteria specified by the service participant; where the discovery mechanism has access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repeatory mechanism; accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: instructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; instructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are valiable for a described with metrics are available for a described with resources and information on how have metrics. Information generated; mechanisms to catalos that are based on these metrics. Can be accessed; o end resources and information on how these metrics. o end row mechanisms to cataly describe store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction description with the results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description as the component stores into a standard, referenceable (math the information to associate with the description elements: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregate of numerous component description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasib	1812		
 a method to enable searching for policies that best meet the search criteria specified by the service participants, where the discovery mechanism: has access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism; a accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contrast that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, threely establishing acontext for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description term distribution descriptions: o ne or more mechanisms to catalog to under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whick would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description. Service description definition definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description	1813	preferably machine processable, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe	
 the service participant: where the discovery mechanism has access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism: accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; infastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; on fastructure monitoring and reporting information on service partially enumerated; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics; Descriptions of the interaction are important for enabling auditability and repetability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have; one or more mechanisms to catature, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description. Muser which the results were generated. tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description. tools to solitate identifying description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceaption. tools to callet the identified description elements to the associated sources into a standard, referenceaption. tools to so to adminite passible. Thus, the service de	1814		
 policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism; accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SQA resources; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics are available for a descriptions to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby estabilishing a contrast that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby estabilishing a contrast, and the combined interaction descriptions? one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution controlined interaction description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution combined interaction descriptions. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description elements that are to be aggregated of numerous component descriptions. Service description elements that are to be aggregated on assemble the composite description. tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the descute of which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service particularis and numerous component descriptions. Service description elements that are to be aggrega	1815	 a method to enable searching for policies that best meet the search criteria specified by 	
 accessible sidrage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources: possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics. mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repetability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: on er more mechanisms to catalong and there usults the means to identify and retrieve interaction descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for fundersults. one or more mechanisms to catalog and the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information sub service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregate for fundersult. tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregate for fundersult. tools to adjusticate identifying description elements and their associate solute studing. tools to adjusticate identifying description elements an	1816	the service participant; where the discovery mechanism has access to the individual	
 examine, and use the policies as defined. Descriptions include: references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance). infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources: oposible interface: requirements to make accessible metrics: information generated; opescible interface: send information on how these metrics: can be accessed; descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and reposability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions? one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: o tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregate to assemble the composite description. tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to facilitate identifying versioning charmes to identify the new description description. tools to actinate wersion of the adscription elements that are to be aggregate to assemble the composite description. tools to actinate interaction description is an example singlificance of change that can support general access and understanding; too	1817	policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism;	
 Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: oninstructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repetability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to cataching to any results the means to identify and retrieve interaction descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have:	1818	 accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, 	
 subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under governance) MUST have: infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of voltable metrics can be accessed; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description to the combined interaction descriptions; o ne or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; o ne or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description. tools to alcilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description defantion; tools to consistent the composite description and encentend. tools to alcilitate identifying the composite description and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update	1819	examine, and use the policies as defined.	
 governance) MUST have: o infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics. The accessed; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description MUST have: o one or more mechanisms to catalog any results the means to identify and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; o one or more mechanisms to rataching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interact description. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component description; tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to calculate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the revel description contexts. tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources that best meent the criteria specified by a service participants. tools to automatically update the composite description agre	1820	Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the	
 infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; oposible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics. mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby estabilishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or new that the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associated with the description elsentically update the composite description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to calilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description description contents, and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to sub to adjute identifying the sources of information to associate with the description access and understanding; tools to sub to accessite the composite descripti	1821	subjects being described. The service description definition (as also partially enumerated under	
 possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated; ornechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed; ornechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby estabilishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, description, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms to rataching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to callet identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to acollect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to appropriately track types of the description as the component sources change, and to consi			
 mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed; mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms to rataching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description is an example of an aggregate for numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have:			
 described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed: omechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, description, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms to rattaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to collect the identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identifying schemes to identify the new description definition MUST have: tools to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contexts and the type and significance of change that cocurred. tools to appropriately track users of the description is schemes to cidentify the new description and the schemes to identify the new description and the scheme has the interaction possible, and component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description are sources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants in relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description is subset of the description is and and refferenceable formation to support general access a			
 mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with policies and contracts that are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the meants to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to collicit the identified description elements and their associate with the description elements; tools to localitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to to consistently upply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is duranisms that reable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants; and notify the willingness of service description is schemes to identify the new description growiders and consumers may both contain policides, technical assumptions, constratints on semantice, and		o <i>i</i>	
 policies and contracts ¹nat are based on these metrics. Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, threby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description of effnition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions: one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description success for an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description are examples of an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description is an example of an aggregate of numerous composite description. tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the isource of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of uses. Thus, the service description is establishing willingness to interact with a tesource of vital information to support service participants; tools to appropriately track usere of the descriptions by service participants and notify tools to appropriately t		•	
 Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions: one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have:			
 establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance or results. Thus, the service description MUST have: one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST thave: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description teo collect the identified description alternation as the component sources thange, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description tools to calcust the type and significance of change that occurred. one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may bot contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 		•	
 or results. Thus, the service description definition MUST have. one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: otols to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the identified description general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for descriptions for the willingness of service participants and notify the millingness of service participants and notify the millingness of service participants and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions; one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component description. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description sof use. Thus, the service description fulloge that compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have:			
1833 logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions: 1834 one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description subset by can be an aggregate of numerous 1836 Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate for which manual 1837 component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual 1838 maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST 1839 have: 1840 tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble 1841 tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description 1842 tools to callect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a 1843 tools to callect the identified description general access and understanding; 1844 tools to acolistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description 1845 tools to acolistently apply versioning schemes to identify the aver context with a 1850 resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of 1851 one or more discovery mechanisms that enables are write participant; one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
 one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the identifying versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description descriptions for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track usees of the descriptions to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may bot contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 the interaction description under which the results were generated. Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. tools to automatically update the composite description staft escures that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify the max may be do constraint policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description for contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify the when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the identified description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: o no er more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 have: tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description descriptions for one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track usere of the descriptions by service participants and notify the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 the composite description; tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to collect the identified description as the component sources othange, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: o one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description elements; tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: o nor or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the descriptions to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 1843 elements; 1844 tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; 1846 tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. 1849 The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track usere of the description is available. Comment [PFB23]: Issue #312 otols to appropriately track usere of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 		, ,	
 standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding; tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources the description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track usere of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 1847 change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. 1849 The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: a one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; b tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 1848 contents and the type and significance of change that occurred. 1849 The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; otools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; otools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 use. Thus, the service description definition MUST have: one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track usere of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 			
 best meet the criteria specified by a service participant; tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify tools to appropriately track users of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 	1852		
 them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 	1853		
 them when a new version of the description is available. The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 	1854	 tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions by service participants and notify 	Comment [PFB23]: Issue #312
1857the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for1858providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on1859semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms1860of willingness	1855	them when a new version of the description is available.	
1858providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on1859semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms1860of willingness	1856	• The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including	
 semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness 	1857	the willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for	
1860 of willingness	1858	providers and consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on	
		semantics, and other technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms	
	1860	of willingness	
		2 Convice Visibility Medal	

1861**4.2 Service Visibility Model**

One of the key requirements for participants interacting with each other in the context of a SOA
ecosystem is achieving visibility: before services can interoperate, the participants have to be visible to
each other using whatever means are appropriate. The Reference Model analyzes visibility in terms of
awareness, willingness, and reachability. In this section, we explore how visibility may be achieved.

 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1
 Edits to CSPRD03

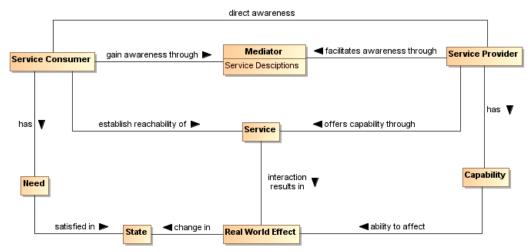
 Standards Track Work Product
 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 56 of 115

1866 4.2.1 Visibility to Business

1867 The relationship of visibility to the SOA ecosystem encompasses both human social structures and 1868 automated IT mechanisms. Figure 24 depicts a business setting that is a basis for visibility as related to 1869 the Social Structure Model (Figure 3) in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view (see Section 3.1). The 1870 Participants acting in the various roles of service consumers, mediators, and service providers may have lirect awareness <u>of each other directly</u> or mediated gain such awareness <u>through some third party acting</u> 1871 in the role of mediator, what we refer to as where mediated awareness is achieved through some third 1872 1873 party. A consumer's willingness to use a service is reflected by the consumer's presumption of satisfying 1874 goals and needs as these compare with information provided in the service description. Service providers 1875 offer capabilities that have real world effects that result in a change in state. Reachability of the service by 1876 the consumer may lead to interactions that change the state of the SOA ecosystem. The consumer can 1877 measure the change of state to determine if the claims made by description and the real world effects of 1878 consuming the service meet the consumer's needs.

1879 Those acting in the roles of consumers, providers, or mediators may reside within a single ownership
 1880 boundary or interactions between them may cross ownership boundaries.



1881 1882

Figure 24 - Visibility to Business

1883 Visibility and interoperability in a SOA ecosystem requires more than location and interface information. A

1884 meta-model for this broader view of visibility is depicted in Section 4.1. In addition to providing improved awareness of service capabilities through description of information such as reachability, behavior

- 1886 models, information models, functionality, and metrics, the service description may identify policies
- 1887 valuable for determination of willingness to interact.

A mediator using service descriptions may provide event notifications to both consumers and providers
 about information relating to the descriptions. One example of this is a publish/subscribe model where the
 mediator allows consumers to subscribe to service description version changes made by the provider.
 Likewise, the mediator may provide notifications to the provider of consumers that have subscribed to

- 1892 service description updates.
- 1893 Another important characteristic of a SOA ecosystem is the ability to narrow visibility to trusted members
- 1894 within a social structure. Mediators for awareness may provide policy based access to service
- 1895 descriptions allowing for the dynamic formation of awareness between trusted members.

1896 4.2.2 Visibility

1897 Attaining visibility is described in terms of steps that lead to visibility. Different participant communities can

1898 bring different contexts for visibility within a single social structure, and the same general steps can be 1899 applied to each of the contexts to accomplish visibility.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 57 of 115

Comment [PFB24]: Issue #318

- 1

Comment [PFB25]: Issue #318

1900 Attaining SOA visibility requires

1902

1903 1904

- service description creation and maintenance,
 - processes and mechanisms for achieving awareness of and accessing descriptions,
 - processes and mechanisms for establishing willingness of participants,
 - processes and mechanisms to determine reachability.

1905 Visibility may occur in stages, i.e. a participant can become aware enough to look or ask for further description, and with this description, the participant can decide on willingness, possibly requiring 1906 1907 additional description. For example, if a potential consumer has a need for a tree cutting (business) 1908 service, the consumer can use a web search engine to find web sites of providers. The web search 1909 engine (a mediator) gives the consumer links to relevant web pages and the consumer can access those descriptions. For those prospective providers that satisfy the consumer's criteria, the consumer's 1910 willingness to interact increases. The consumer may contact several tree services to get detailed cost 1911 information (or arrange for an estimate) and may ask for references (further description). The consumer is 1912 likely to establish full visibility and proceed with interaction with the tree service that mutually establishes 1913 1914 visibility.

1915 4.2.2.1 Awareness

1916 An important means for one participant to be aware of another is to have access to a description of that 1917 participant and for the description to be sufficiently complete to support the other requirements of visibility.

1918 Awareness can be established without any action on the part of the target participant other than the target

- 1919 providing appropriate descriptions. Awareness is often discussed in terms of consumer awareness of 1920 providers but the concepts are equally valid for provider awareness of consumers.
- Awareness can be decomposed into: creating the descriptions, making them available, and discovering
 the descriptions. Discovery can be initiated or it can be by notification.

1923Achieving awareness in a SOA ecosystem can range from word of mouth to formal service descriptions in
a standards-based registry/repository. Some other examples of achieving awareness in a SOA
ecosystem are the use of a web page containing description information, email notifications of

1926 descriptions, and document based descriptions.

1927 Direct awareness is awareness-occurs between a consumer and provider without the use of a third party.
 1928 A mediator for Mediated awareness, on the other hand, is provided by a third party participant whose use
 1929 provides awareness to one or more providers or consumers of one or more services. Direct awareness is awareness is awareness between a consumer and provider without the use of a third party. The use of aA

1931 registry/repository can provide such awareness as can a Web page displaying similar information.

- 1932 Direct awareness may be the result of having previously established an execution context, or direct
 1933 awareness may include determining the presence of services and then querying the service directly for
 1934 description. As an example, a priori visibility of some sensor device may provide the means for interaction
- or a query for standardized sensor device metadata may be broadcast to multiple locations. If
 acknowledged, the service interface for the device may directly provide description to a consumer so the
 consumer can determine willingness to interact.
- 1938 The same medium for awareness may be direct in one context and may be mediated in another context.
 For example, a service provider may maintain a web site with links to the provider's descriptions of
 services giving the consumers direct awareness to the provider's services. Alternatively, a community
 may maintain a web site with a search interface that makes use of an index of these (and possibly other)
 descriptions of services, and the web site could be used by any number of consumers. More than one
 approach to mediation may be involved, as different sources of description may specialize in different
 functions whose use provides mediation.
 Descriptions may be formal or informal. Section 4.1, provides a comprehensive model for service

1945 Descriptions may be format of informatic section 4.1, provides a comprehensive model for service
 1946 description that can be used to mediate visibility. Using consistent description taxonomics and standards
 1947 based mediated awareness helps provide more effective awareness.

1948 4.2.2.1.1 Mediated Awareness

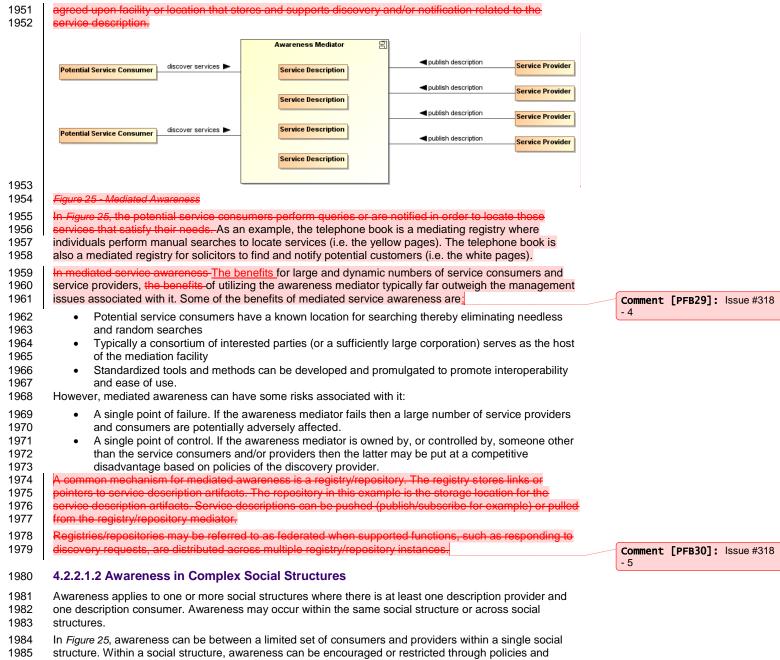
Mediated awareness typically promotes simplification of the overall services infrastructure. Rather than all potential service consumers being informed on a continual basis about all services, there is a known or

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 58 of 115

Comment	[PFB26]:	Issue #318
2		

Comment [PFB27]: Issue #318, submitter comment

Comment [PFB28]: Issue #313 - 13



- 1986 these policies can affect participant willingness. The information about policies should be incorporated in 1987 the relevant descriptions. Additionally, the conditions for establishing contracts are governed within a
- 1988 social structure.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 59 of 115

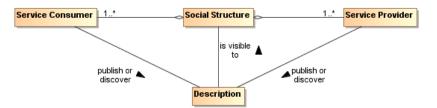


Figure 25 - Awareness in a SOA Ecosystem

1991 IT policy/contract mechanisms can be used by visibility mechanisms to provide awareness between social

1992 structures, including trust mechanisms to enable awareness between trusted social structures. For

example, government organizations may want to limit awareness of an organization's services to specificcommunities of interest.

Another common business model for awareness is maximizing awareness to those within the social structure, the traditional market place business model. A centralized awareness-mediator often arises as a provider for this global visibility, a gatekeeper of visibility so to speak. For example, Google is a centralized awareness-mediator for accessing information on the web. As another example, television networks have centralized entities providing a level of awareness to communities that otherwise could not be achieved without going through the television network.

However, mediators have motivations, and they may be selective in which information they choose to
 make available to potential consumers. For example, in a secure environment, the mediator may enforce

security policies and make information selectively available depending on the security clearance of the
 consumers.

2005 4.2.2.2 Willingness

Having achieved awareness, participants use descriptions to help determine their willingness to interact
 with another participant. Both awareness and willingness are determined prior to consumer/provider
 interaction.

By establishing a willingness to interact within a particular social structure (see Section 3.2.5.1), the
 social structure provides the participant access to capabilities based on conditions the social structure
 finds appropriate for its context. The participant can use these capabilities to satisfy goals and objectives
 as specified by the participant's needs.

2013 Information used to determine willingness is provided by Description (see Section 4.1.1). Information

- referenced by Description may come from many sources. For example, a mediator for descriptions may provide 3rd party annotations for reputation. Another source for reputation may be a participant's own
- history of interactions with another participant. The contribution of real world effects to providing evidence
- 2017 and establishing the reputation of a participant is discussed with relation to *Figure 9*.

A participant inspects functionality for potential satisfaction of needs. Identity is associated with any participant, however, identity may or may not be verified. If available, participant reputation may be a deciding factor for willingness to interact. Policies and contracts referenced by the description may be particularly important to determine the agreements and commitments required for business interactions.

2022 Provenance may be used for verification of authenticity of a resource.

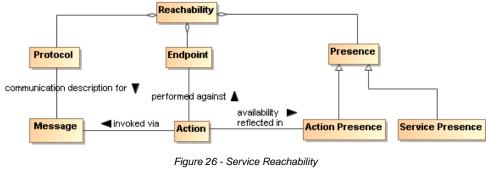
Mechanisms that aid in determining willingness make use of the artifacts referenced by descriptions of services. Mechanisms for establishing willingness could be as simple as rendering service description information for human consumption to automated evaluation of functionality, policies, and contracts by a rules engine. The rules engine for determining willingness could operate as a policy decision procedure as defined in Section 4.4.

2028 4.2.2.3 Reachability

Reachability involves knowing the endpoint, protocol, and presence of a service. At a minimum,
 reachability requires information about the location of the service and the protocol describing the means
 of communication.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 60 of 115 Comment [PFB31]: Issue #313 - 14



2034 Endpoint

2032 2033

2035

2039

A reference-able entity, processor or resource against which an action can be performed.

2036 Protocol 2037

A structured means by which details of a service interaction mechanism are defined.

2038 Presence

The measurement of reachability of a service at a particular point in time.

2040 A protocol defines a structured method of communication. Presence is determined by interaction through 2041 a communication protocol. Presence may not be known in many cases until the interaction begins. To

2042 overcome this problem, IT mechanisms may make use of presence protocols to provide the current 2043 up/down status of a service.

2044 Service reachability enables service participants to locate and interact with one another. Each action may 2045 have its own endpoint and also its own protocols associated with the endpoint and whether there is 2046 presence for the action through that endpoint. Presence of a service is an aggregation of the presence of 2047 the service's actions, and the service level may aggregate to some degraded or restricted presence if 2048 some action presence is not confirmed. For example, if error processing actions are not available, the service can still provide required functionality if no error processing is needed. This implies reachability 2049 relates to each action as well as applying to the service/business as a whole. 2050

4.2.3 Architectural Implications 2051

2052 2053	Visibility in a SOA ecosystem has the following architectural implications on mechanisms providing support for awareness, willingness, and reachability:
2054 2055 2056 2057 2058 2059	 Mechanisms providing support for awareness MUST have the following minimum capabilities: creation of Description, preferably conforming to a standard Description format and structure; publishing of Description directly to a consumer or through a third party mediator; discovery of Description, preferably conforming to a standard for Description discovery; notification of Description updates or notification of the addition of new and relevant
2059	Descriptions;
2000	 classification of Description elements according to standardized classification schemes.
2062	• In a SOA ecosystem with complex social structures, awareness MAY be provided for specific
2063	communities of interest. The architectural mechanisms for providing awareness to communities
2064	of interest MUST support:
2065	 policies that allow dynamic formation of communities of interest;
2066	 trust that awareness can be provided for and only for specific communities of interest, the
2067	bases of which are typically built on encryption technologies.
2068	 The architectural mechanisms for determining willingness to interact MUST support:
2069	 verification of identity and credentials of the provider and/or consumer;
2070	 access to and understanding of description;
2071	 inspection of functionality and capabilities;
	soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03 02 November 2012 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. Page 61 of 115

2072 inspection of policies and/or contracts. 0 2073 The architectural mechanisms for establishing reachability **MUST** support: the location or address of an endpoint; 2074 0 verification and use of a service interface by means of a communication protocol; 2075 0 determination of presence with an endpoint which MAY only be determined at the point of 2076 0 interaction but MAY be further aided by the use of a presence protocol for which the 2077 2078 endpoints actively participate.

2079 4.3 Interacting with Services Model

Interaction is the activity involved in using a service to access capability in order to achieve a particular
 desired real world effect, where real world effect is the actual result of using a service. An interaction can
 be characterized by a sequence of communicative actions. Consequently, interacting with a service, i.e.
 participating in joint action with the service—usually accomplished by a series of message exchanges—
 involves individual actions performed by both the service and the consumer.⁷ Note that a participant (or
 delegate acting on behalf of the participant) can be the sender of a message, the receiver of a message,
 or both.

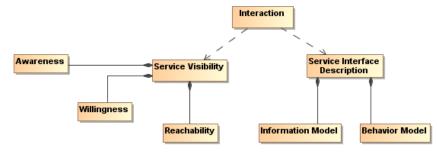
2087 4.3.1 Interaction Dependencies

2088 Recall from the Reference Model that service visibility is the capacity for those with needs and those with 2089 capabilities to be able to interact with each other, and that the service interface is the means by which the 2090 underlying capabilities of a service are accessed. Ideally, the details of the underlying service 2091 implementation are abstracted away by the service interface. (Service) interaction therefore has a direct

dependency on the visibility of the service as well as its implementation-neutral interface (see *Figure 27*).

2093 Service visibility is composed of awareness, willingness, and reachability, and these are discussed in

2094 Section 4.2. The information related to the service interface description is discussed in Section 4.1.1.3.1, 2095 and the specifics of interaction are detailed in the remainder of Section 4.3. Service visibility is modeled in 2096 Section 4.2.2.



2097 2098

Figure 27 - Interaction dependencies

2099 4.3.2 Actions and Events

2100 The SOA-RAF uses message exchange between service participants to denote actions performed 2101 against and by the service, and to denote events that report on real world effects that are caused by the 2102 service actions. A visual model of the relationship between these concepts is shown in *Figure 28*.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 62 of 115

⁷ In order for multiple actors to participate in a joint action, they must each act according to their role within the joint action. For SOA-based systems, this is achieved through a message exchange style of communication. The concept of "joint action" is further described in Section 3.3.2.

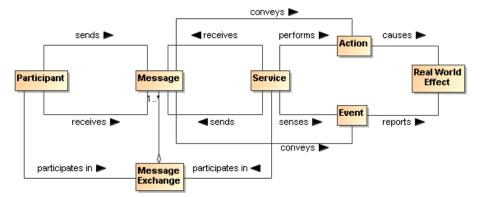


Figure 28 - A 'message' denotes either an action or an event

2105 Both actions and events, realized by the SOA services, are denoted by the messages. The Reference

2106 Model states that the action model characterizes the "permissible set of actions that may be invoked 2107 against a service." We extend that notion here to include events and that messages are intended for

2108 invoking actions or for notification of events.

2109 In Section 3.3.2 we saw that participants interact with each other in order to participate in joint actions. A 2110 joint action is not itself the same thing as the result of the joint action. When a joint action is participated in

with a service, the real world effect that results may be reported in the form of an event notification. 2111

4.3.3 Message Exchange 2112

2113 Message exchange is the means by which service participants (or their delegates) interact with each 2114 other. There are two primary modes of interaction: joint actions that cause real world effects and

notification of events that report real world effects⁶ 2115

2116 A message exchange is used to affect an action when the messages contain the appropriately formatted

2117 content, are directed towards a particular action in accordance with the action model, and the delegates 2118 involved interpret the message appropriately.

2119 A message exchange is also used to communicate event notifications. An event is an occurrence that is

2120 of interest to some participant; in our case when some real world effect has occurred. Just as action

2121 messages have formatting requirements, so do event notification messages. In this way, the Information

2122 Model of a service must specify the syntax (structure), and semantics (meaning) of the action messages and event notification messages as part of a service interface. It must also specify the syntax and 2123

semantics of any data that is carried as part of a payload of the action or event notification message. The 2124

Information Model is described in greater detail in the Service Description Model (see Section 4.1). 2125

2126 In addition to the Information Model that describes the syntax and semantics of the messages and data 2127 payloads, exception conditions and error handling in the event of faults (e.g., network outages, improper message formats, etc.) must be specified or referenced as part of the Service Description. 2128

When a message is used to invoke an action, the correct interpretation typically requires the receiver to 2129

2130 perform an operation, which itself invokes a set of private, internal actions. These operations represent 2131 the sequence of (private) actions a service must perform in order to validly participate in a given joint action.

2132

2133 Similarly, the correct consequence of realizing a real world effect may be to initiate the reporting of that 2134 real world effect via an event notification.

⁸ The notion of "joint" in joint action implies that you have to have a speaker and a listener in order to interact.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 63 of 115

2135 Message Exchange

The means by which **joint action** and event notifications are coordinated by service **participants** (or **delegates**).

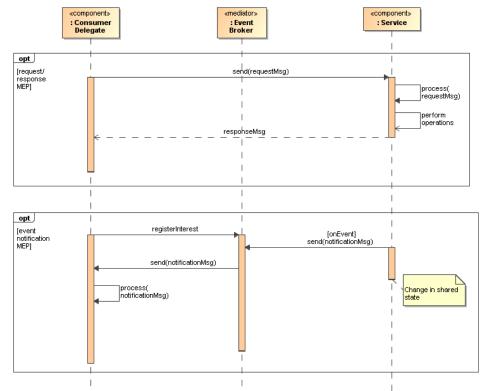
2138 Operations

2139The sequence of actions a service must perform in order to validly participate in a given joint2140action.

2141 4.3.3.1 Message Exchange Patterns (MEPs)

2142 The basic temporal aspect of service interaction can be characterized by two fundamental message 2143 exchange patterns (MEPs):

- Request/response to represent how actions cause a real world effect
- Event notification to represent how events report a real world effect
- 2146 This is by no means a complete list of all possible MEPs used for inter- or intra-enterprise messaging but
- 2147 it does represent those that are most commonly used in exchange of information and reporting changes
- 2148 in state both within organizations and across organizational boundaries.



2149

2150

Figure 29 - Fundamental SOA message exchange patterns (MEPs)

Recall from the Reference Model that the Process Model characterizes "the temporal relationships
between and temporal properties of actions and events associated with interacting with the service."
Thus, MEPs are a key element of the Process Model. The meta-level aspects of the Process Model (just as with the Action Model) are provided as part of the Service Description Model (see Section 4.1).

2155 In the UML sequence diagram shown in *Figure 29* it is assumed that the service participants (consumer

and provider) have delegated message handling to hardware or software delegates acting on their behalf. In the case of the service consumer, this is represented by the *Consumer Delegate* component. In the

 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1
 Edits to CSPRD03

 Standards Track Work Product
 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 64 of 115 2158 case of the service provider, the delegate is represented by the Service component. The message 2159 interchange model illustrated represents a logical view of the MEPs and not a physical view. In other 2160 words, specific hosts, network protocols, and underlying messaging system are not shown, as these tend to be implementation specific. Although such implementation-specific elements are considered outside 2161 the scope of this document, they are important considerations in modeling the SOA execution context. 2162 Recall from the Reference Model that the execution context of a service interaction is "the set of 2163 infrastructure elements, process entities, policy assertions and agreements that are identified as part of 2164 2165 an instantiated service interaction, and thus forms a path between those with needs and those with 2166 capabilities."

2167 4.3.3.2 Request/Response MEP

2168 In a request/response MEP, the Consumer Delegate component sends a request message to the Service2169 component. The Service component then processes the request message. Based on the content of the

- 2170 message, the Service component performs the service operation and the associated private actions.
- 2171 Following the completion of these operations, a response message is returned to the Consumer Delegate
- component. The response could be that a step in a process is complete, the initiation of a follow-on
 operation, or the return of requested information.⁹
- 2174 Although the sequence diagram shows a synchronous interaction (because the sender of the request
- 2175 message, i.e., Consumer Delegate, is blocked from continued processing until a response is returned
- from the Service) other variations of request/response are valid, including *asynchronous* (non-blocking) interaction through use of queues, channels, or other messaging techniques.
- 2178 What is important to convey here is that the request/response MEP represents action, which causes a
- real world effect, irrespective of the underlying messaging techniques and messaging infrastructure used
 to implement the request/response MEP.

2181 4.3.3.3 Event Notification MEP

2182 An event is made visible to interested consumers by means of an event notification message exchange

- that reports a real world effect; specifically, a change in shared state between service participants. The basic event notification MEP takes the form of a one-way message sent by a notifier component (in this
- 2185 case, the Service component) and received by components with an interest in the event (here, the
- 2186 Consumer Delegate component).

2187 Often the sending component may not be fully aware of all the components that wish to receive the

- 2188 notification; particularly in so-called publish/subscribe ('pub/sub') situations. In event notification message
- 2189 exchanges, it is rare to have a tightly-coupled link between the sending and the receiving component(s)
- for a number of practical reasons. One of the most common constraints for pub/sub messaging is the potential for network outages or communication interrupts that can result in loss of notification of events.
- 2191 potential for network outages of communication interrupts that can result in loss of notification of eve 2192 Therefore, a third-party mediator component is often used to decouple the sending and receiving
- 2193 components.

Although this is typically an implementation issue, because this type of third-party decoupling is so
 common in event-driven systems, it is warranted for use in modeling this type of message exchange in

the SOA-RAF. This third-party intermediary is shown in *Figure* 29 as an Event Broker mediator. As with

the request/response MEP, no distinction is made between synchronous versus asynchronous

communication, although asynchronous message exchange is illustrated in the UML sequence diagram
 depicted in *Figure 29*.

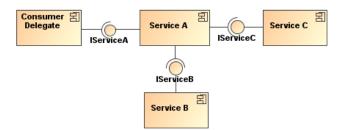
soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 65 of 115 **Comment [PFB32]:** Issue #318 - 6

⁹ There are cases when a response is not always desired and this would be an example of a "one-way" MEP. Similarly, while not shown here, there are cases when some type of "callback" MEP is required in which the consumer agent is actually exposed as a service itself and is able to process incoming messages from another service.

4.3.4 Composition of Services 2200

2201 Composition of services is the act of aggregating or 'composing' a single service from one or more other 2202 services. A simple model of service composition is illustrated in Figure 30.



2203 2204

Figure 30 - Simple model of service composition

2205 Here, Service A is a service that has an exposed interface IServiceA, which is available to the Consumer 2206

Delegate and relies on two other services in its implementation. The Consumer Delegate does not know 2207 that Services B and C are used by Service A, or whether they are used in serial or parallel, or if their

operations succeed or fail. The Consumer Delegate only cares about the success or failure of Service A. 2208

The exposed interfaces of Services B and C (IService B and IServiceC) are not necessarily hidden from 2209

2210 the Consumer Delegate; only the fact that these services are used as part of the composition of Service

- 2211 A. In this example, there is no practical reason the Consumer Delegate could not interact with Service B
- 2212 or Service C in some other interaction scenario.

2213 While the service composition is opaque from the Consumer Delegate's perspective, it is transparent to

2214 the service owner. This transparency is necessary for service management to properly manage the

- dependencies between the services used in constructing the composite service-including managing the 2215 2216
- service's lifecycle. The subject of services as management entities is described and modeled in the Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View of the SOA-RAF and is not further elaborated in this section. The 2217

point to be made here is that there can be different levels of opaqueness or transparency when it comes 2218

to visibility of service composition. 2219

2220 Services can be composed in a variety of ways, including direct consumer-to-service interaction, by using 2221 programming techniques or using an intermediary, such as an orchestration engine leveraging higher level orchestration languages. Such approaches are further elaborated in the following sub-sections.

2222

4.3.5 Implementing Service Composition 2223

2224 Services are implemented through a combination of processes and collaboration. The concepts involved and that would be used in the context of exchanges both within and across organizational boundaries are 2225 described and modeled as part of the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view of this reference 2226 architecture (see Section 3). 2227

The principles involved in the composition of services (including but not limited to loose coupling, 2228 2229 selective transparency and opacity, dynamic interactions) are equally applicable to services which 2230 implement business processes and collaborations. Business processes and collaborations represent

2231 complex, multi-step business functions that may involve multiple participants, including 2232 within the enterprise and beyond, including external customers, and trading partners. Therefore, such 2233 complexities cannot simply be ignored when transforming traditional business processes and 2234 collaborations to their service-oriented variants.

- 2235 While business processes are primarily concerned with describing how services are invoked and 2236 executed, business collaborations are more concerned with how actors (usually from different organizations) interact to realize a desired effect. 2237
- 2238 Collaborations can include processes (for example, when one actor executes a particular activity
- 2239 according to the predefined steps of a process) as much as processes can include collaborations (a
- predefined step of a particular process may include agreed-upon activities provided by other participants). 2240

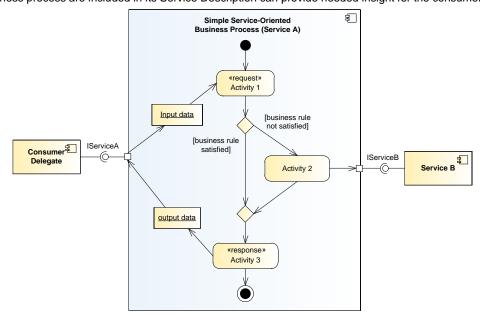
soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 66 of 115 Comment [PFB33]: Issue #312 - 10

- The techniques discussed below can be applied to any combination of services that instantiate serviceoriented business processes or service-oriented business collaborations.

2243 4.3.5.1 Service-Oriented Business Processes

- 2244 Service orientation as applied to a business process includes
 - abstracting the set of activities and rules governing a business process; and
 - composing and exposing the resultant logic as a reusable service.
- 2247 When business processes are implemented as SOA services, all of the concepts used to describe and 2248 model composition of services that were articulated in Section 4.3.4 apply.
- 2249 Business processes have temporal properties and can be short-lived or long-lived. Further, these
- 2250 processes may involve many participants and may be important considerations for the consumer of a
- service-oriented business process. For example, a consumer may need to know certain details of the business process in order to have confidence in the resulting real world effects. For business processes
- implemented as SOA-based services, ensuring that the meta-level aspects of the service-oriented
- business process are included in its Service Description can provide needed insight for the consumer.



2255 2256

2245

2246

Figure 31 - Abstract example of a simple business process exposed as a service

In Figure 32, we use a UML activity diagram to model the simple service-oriented business process. This allows us to capture the major elements, such as the set of related activities to be performed (an activity being made up of one or more related actions, as explained in Section 3.3.2); the links between these activities in a logical flow; data that is passed between activities, and any relevant business rules that govern the transitions between the activities. While specific actions and activities can be readily modeled in more detail, they are not illustrated in the model in Figure 32.

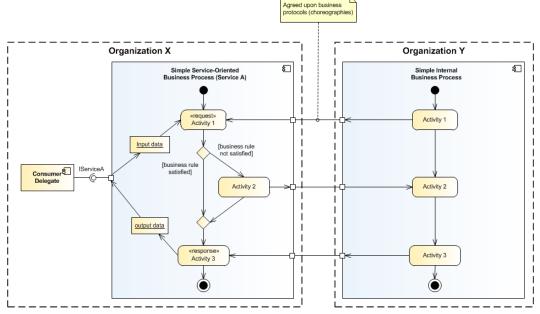
2263 This example is based on a request/response MEP and captures how one process can leverage

- 2264 fulfillment of a particular activity (Activity 2) leverages by calling upon an externally-provided service,
- 2265 Service B. The entire service-oriented business process is exposed as Service A that is accessible via its 2266 externally visible interface, IServiceA. It is the availability of this external interface, and the description of 2267 what the service intends, that distinguishes this from a simple business process.
- Although not explicitly shown in the model above, it is assumed that there exists a software or hardware component that executes the process flow (Functionality of Service A). However, human actors may also

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 67 of 115 take part. This may be particularly important in cases where the automation fails and human intervention becomes necessary.

2272 4.3.5.2 Service-Oriented Business Collaborations

- 2273 Whereas a service can execute according to a predefined business process determined by one
- organization, service composition can also be accomplished as a cooperation, or business collaboration,
 between actors in different organizations and systems.
- In a service-oriented business collaboration, multiple participants interact in a peer-style communication
 as part of some larger business transaction by exchanging messages with trading partners and external
 organizations (e.g., suppliers) [NEWCOMER/LOMOW]. Participants do not necessarily expose the
 entirety of their respective capabilities but rather use service-based interactions to access those
 capabilities needed to fulfill the collaboration.
- 2281 Service-orientation as applied to a business collaboration includes:
- ability of participants to individually provide and commit to what is required during an interaction for a
 collaboration to be successfully realized, including acceptance of preconditions and expected
 outcome;
- availability of service functionality sufficient to realize the effects expected from the business
 collaboration;
- 2287 willingness of participants to engage in interactions that are required as part of the collaboration;
- availability of shared state and notifications to all participants who require them, such that they can
 fulfill their respective parts of the collaboration.
- Any service contributing to such a service-oriented business collaboration participates "as is", without modification, and consistent with its own service description. Each contributing service is only an instrument in the collaboration and is not typically "aware" of its own contribution except as would be conveyed through inputs, access to shared states, or event notifications that are generally available to the service.



2295 2296

Figure 32 - Abstract example of a more complex composition that relies on collaboration

Figure 32, which is a variant of the example illustrated earlier (in *Figure 31*), includes trust boundaries
 between two organizations; namely, Organization X and Organization Y. It is assumed that these two
 organizations are peer entities that have an interest in a business collaboration, for example,

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 68 of 115 Organization X and Organization Y could be trading partners. Organization X retains the service-oriented
 business process Service A, which is exposed to internal consumers via its provided service interface,
 IServiceA. Organization Y also has a business process that is involved in the business collaboration; in
 this example, it is an internal business process but it could also be exposed to potential consumers either
 within or outside its organizational boundary if it is designed as a reusable service in accordance with
 SOA design principles.

In *Figure 32*, the communications between Organization X and Organization Y are shown through ports where there are "agreed-upon business protocols" that also cover the order in which activities are carried out. These ports do not explicitly show service interfaces in order to emphasize that in the example these are not intended to be generally available to any actor in the SOA ecosystem; however, the interfaces should adhere to the principles involved in the composition of services.

The message exchanges that are used need to specify how and when to initiate activity by the other trading partner, i.e., communication between Organization X and Organization Y. Defining the business

- 2313 protocols used in the business collaboration involves precisely specifying the visible message exchange
- behavior and order of each of the parties involved in the protocol, without revealing internal
 implementation details [NEWCOMER/LOMOW]. This is consistent with the Information and Behavior

2316 Models discussed in the Reference Model and as part of service description in section 4.1.

2317 Business processes and collaboration are thus both facets of SOA service composition. The degree to

2317 Business processes and collaboration are thus both facets of SOA service composition. The degree to 2318 which one predominates over the other (and the mix of the two that emerges) will be a reflection of many

factors including the relative autonomy of participants and actors, the desired flexibility of a system, the

2320 extent of trust involved and the assessment of risk, among others.

2321 **4.3.6 Architectural Implications of Interacting with Services**

Interacting with Services has the following architectural implications on mechanisms that facilitate serviceinteraction:

2324	•	A well-define	ed service Information Model MUST be provided that:	
2325		0	describes the syntax and semantics of the messages used to denot	e actions and events;
2326		0	describes the syntax and semantics of the data payload(s) containe	d within messages;
2327		0	documents exception conditions in the event of faults due to networ	
2328			message/data formats, etc.;	0 / 1 1
2329		0	is both human readable and machine processable;	
2330		0	is referenceable from the Service Description artifact.	
2331	•	A well-define	ed service Behavior Model (as defined in the SOA-RM) MUST be pro	ovided that:
2332		0	characterizes the knowledge of the actions invoked against the serv	
2333			report real world effects as a result of those actions;	
2334		0	characterizes the temporal relationships and temporal properties of	actions and events
2335			associated in a service interaction;	
2336		0	describe activities involved in a workflow activity that represents a u	nit of work;
2337		0	describes the role (s) performed in a service-oriented business proc	
2338			oriented business collaboration;	
2339		0	is both human readable and machine processable;	
2340		0	is referenceable from the Service Description artifact.	
2341	٠	Mechanisms	s MUST be included to support composition of service-oriented busin	ess processes and
2342		service-orie	nted business collaborations such as:	
2343		0	Declarative and programmatic compositional languages;	
2344		0	Orchestration and/or choreography engines that support multi-step	processes as part of a
2345			short-lived or long-lived business transaction;	
2346		0	Orchestration and/or choreography engines that support compensation	ting transactions in
2347			the presences of exception and fault conditions.	
2348	٠	Infrastructur	e MUST be specified that provides mechanisms to support service in	teraction, including
2349		but not limite	ed to:	
2350		0	mediation within service interactions based on shared semantics;	
2351		0	translation and transformation of multiple application-level protocols	to standard network
2352			transport protocols;	
	60	a ra v1 0 conrd0		02 November 2012

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 69 of 115

2353	 auditing and logging that provide a data store and mechanism to record information
2354	related to service interaction activity such as message traffic patterns, security violations,
2355	and service contract and policy violations
2356	 security that provides authorization and authentication support, etc., which provide
2357	protection against common security threats in a SOA ecosystem;
2358	 monitoring such as hardware and software mechanisms that both monitor the
2359	performance of systems that host services and network traffic during service interaction,
2360	and are capable of generating regular monitoring reports.
2361	• In a service-oriented business collaboration, any language used MUST be capable of describing the
2362	coordination required of those service-oriented business processes that cross organizational
2363	boundaries. This SHOULD provide for contingencies, in case of an upset or when automation fails,
2364	including any necessary human intervention.

2365 **4.4 Policies and Contracts Model**

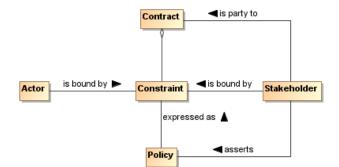
- A common phenomenon of many machines and systems is that the scope of potential behavior is much
 broader than is actually needed for a particular circumstance. This is especially true of a system as
 powerful as a SOA ecosystem. As a result, the behavior and performance of the system tend to be under constrained by the implementation; instead, the actual behavior is expressed by means of policies of
 some form. Policies define the choices that stakeholders make; these choices are used to guide the
 actual behavior of the system to the desired behavior and performance.
- As noted in Section 3.2.5.2, a policy is an expression of constraints that is promulgated by a stakeholder who has the responsibility of ensuring that the constraint is enforceable. In contrast, contracts are **agreements** between participants.
- 2375 While responsibility for enforcement may differ, both contracts and policies share a common characteristic
- 2376 there is a constraint that must be enforced. In both cases, the mechanisms needed to enforce
- 2377 constraints are likely to be identical; in this model, we focus on the issues involved in representing
- 2378 policies and contracts and on some of the principles behind their enforcement.

2379 4.4.1 Policy and Contract Representation

- A policy constraint is a specific kind of constraint: the ontology of policies and contracts includes the core concepts of permission, obligation, owner, and subject. In addition, it may be necessary to be able to
- combine policy constraints and to be able to resolve policy conflicts.

2383 Policy Framework

- 2384 A policy framework is a language in which **policy constraints** may be expressed.
- A policy framework combines syntax for expressing policy constraints together with a decision procedure
 for determining if a policy constraint is satisfied.



2396

2409

2411

2413

Figure 33 - Policies and Contracts

- 2389 We can characterize a policy framework in terms of a **logical framework** and an ontology of policies. The 2390 **policy ontology** details specific kinds of policy constraints that can be expressed; and the logical
- framework is a 'glue' that allows us to express combinations of policies.

2392 Logical Framework

A linguistic framework consisting of a syntax – a way of writing expressions – and a semantics –
 a way of interpreting the expressions.

2395 Policy Ontology

- A formalization of a set of concepts that are relevant to forming policy expressions.
- For example, a policy ontology that allows identification of simple constraints such as the existence of a property, or that a value of a property should be compared to a fixed value – is often enough to express many basic constraints.
- Included in many policy ontologies are the basic signals of permissions and obligations. Some policy
 frameworks are sufficiently constrained that there is no possibility of representing an obligation; in which
 case there is often no need to 'call out' the distinction between permissions and obligations.
- The logical framework is also a strong determiner of the expressivity of the policy framework: the richer the logical framework, the richer the set of policy constraints that can be expressed. However, there is a strong inverse correlation such that increasing expressivity yields less ease and greater inefficiency of implementation.
- 2407 In the discussion that follows we assume the following basic policy ontology:

2408 Policy Owner

A stakeholder that asserts and enforces the policy.

2410 Policy Subject

An actor whose action, or a resource whose maintenance or use, is constrained by a policy.

2412 Policy Constraint

A measurable and enforceable assertion found within a **policy**.

2414 Policy Object

2415 An identifiable state, action or resource that is potentially constrained by the policy.

2416 4.4.2 Policy and Contract Enforcement

- 2417 The enforcement of policy constraints has to address two core problems: how to enforce the atomic policy
- constraints, and how to enforce combinations of policy constraints. In addition, it is necessary to address
- the resolution of policy conflicts. Contracts are the documented agreement between two or more parties
- 2420 but otherwise have the same enforcement requirements as policies.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 71 of 115

2421 4.4.2.1 Enforcing Simple Policy Constraints

2422The two primary kinds of policy constraint – permission and obligation – naturally lead to different styles2423of enforcement. A permission constraint must typically be enforced prior to the policy subject invoking the2424policy object. On the other hand, an obligation constraint must typically be enforced after the fact through2425some form of auditing process and remedial action.

For example, if a communications policy required that all communication be encrypted, this is enforceable at the point of communication: any attempt to communicate a message that is not encrypted can be

2428 blocked.

Similarly, an obligation to pay for services rendered is enforced by ensuring that payment arrives within a
 reasonable period of time. Invoices are monitored for prompt (or lack of) payment.

- The key concepts in enforcing both forms of policy constraint are the policy decision and the policyenforcement.
- 2433 Policy Decision

2434 A determination as to whether a given **policy constraint** is satisfied.

A policy decision is effectively a measurement of some state – typically a portion of the SOA ecosystem's **shared state**. This implies a certain *timeliness* in the measuring: a measurement that is too early or is too

2437 late does not actually help in determining if the policy constraint is satisfied appropriately.

2438 Policy Enforcement

2439A mechanism that limits the behavior and/or state of policy subjects to comply with a policy2440decision.

A policy enforcement implies the use of some mechanism to ensure compliance with a policy decision.

- 2442 The range of mechanisms is completely dependent on the kinds of atomic policy constraints that the 2443 policy framework may support. As noted above, the two primary styles of constraint – permission and
- 2444 obligation lead to different styles of enforcement.

2445 4.4.2.2 Conflict Resolution

2446 Whenever it is possible that more than one policy constraint applies in a given situation, there is the 2447 potential that the policy constraints themselves are not mutually consistent. For example, a policy 2448 constraint that requires communication to be encrypted and a policy constraint that requires an 2449 administrator to read every communication conflict with each other – the two policy constraints cannot 2450 both be satisfied concurrently.

In general, with sufficiently rich policy frameworks, it is not possible to always resolve policy conflicts
 automatically. However, a reasonable approach is to augment the policy decision process with simple

2453 policy conflict resolution rules; with the potential for *escalating* a policy conflict to human adjudication.

2454 Policy Conflict

2458

2455A state in a **policy decision** process in which the satisfaction of one or more **policy constraints**2456leads directly to the violation of one or more other policy constraints.

2457 Policy Conflict Resolution

A rule determining which policy constraint(s) should prevail if a policy conflict occurs.

2459 The inevitable consequence of policy conflicts is that it is not possible to guarantee that all policy 2460 constraints are satisfied at all times. This, in turn, implies certain *flexibility* in the application of policy 2461 constraints: each individual constraint may not always be honored.

2462 4.4.3 Architectural Implications

- 2463 The key choices that must be made in a system of policies center on the policy framework, policy 2464 enforcement, and conflict resolution
- There **SHOULD** be a standard policy framework that is adopted across ownership domains within the SOA ecosystem:

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 72 of 115 **Comment [PFB34]:** Issue #313 - 16

Comment [PFB35]: Issue #313

2467 2468	0 0	This framework MUST permit the expression of simple policy constraints The framework MAY allow (to a varying extent) the combination of policy constraints,			
2469		including	Comment	[PFB36]:	Issue #313
2470		Both positive and negative constraints	- 18		
2471		 Conjunctions and disjunctions of constraints 			
2472		The quantification of constraints			
2473	0	The framework MUST at least allow the policy subject and the policy object to be identified as			
2474		well as the policy constraint.			
2475	0	The framework MAY allow further structuring of policies into modules, inheritance between			
2476		policies and so on.			
2477 •	There	SHOULD be mechanisms that facilitate the application of policies:			
2478	0	There SHOULD be mechanisms that allow policy decisions to be made, consistent with the			
2479		policy frameworks.			
2480	0	There SHOULD be mechanisms to enforce policy decisions	Comment	[PFB37]:	Issue #313
2481		There SHOULD be mechanisms to support the measurement of whether certain	- 19		J
2482		policy constraints are satisfied, or to what degree they are satisfied.			
2483		 Such enforcement mechanisms MAY include support for both permission-style 			
2484		constraints and obligation-style constraints.			
2485		Enforcement mechanisms MAY support the simultaneous enforcement of multiple			
2486		policy constraints across multiple points in the SOA ecosystem.			
2487	0	There SHOULD be mechanisms to resolve policy conflicts	Comment	: [PFB38]:	Issue #313
2488		 This MAY involve escalating policy conflicts to human adjudication. 	- 20		
2489	0	There SHOULD be mechanisms that support the management and promulgation of policies.			

5 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View
Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just power from the consent of the governed American Declaration of Independence
The Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View focuses on the issues, requirements and responsibilities involved in owning a SOA-based system.
Ownership of a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem raises significantly different challenges to owning other complex systems – such as Enterprise suites – because there are strong limits on the control and authority of any one party when a system spans multiple ownership domains.
Even when a SOA-based system is deployed internally within an organization, there are multiple internal stakeholders involved and there may not be a simple hierarchy of control and management. Thus, an early consideration of how multiple boundaries affect SOA-based systems provides a firm foundation for dealing with them in whatever form they are found rather than debating whether the boundaries should exist.
This view focuses on the governance and management of SOA-based systems, on the security challenges involved in running a SOA-based system, and testing challenges.



2507 2508

Figure 34 - Model Elements Described in the Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View

2509 The following subsections present models of these functions.

2510 5.1 Governance Model

2511 The Reference Model defines Service Oriented Architecture as an architectural paradigm for organizing 2512 and utilizing distributed capabilities that may be under the control of different ownership domains [SOA-2513 RM]. Consequently, it is important that organizations that plan to engage in service interactions adopt 2514 governance policies and procedures sufficient to ensure that there is standardization across both internal 2515 and external organizational boundaries to promote the effective creation and use of SOA-based services.

2516 5.1.1 Understanding Governance

2517 5.1.1.1 Terminology

2518Governance is about making decisions that are aligned with the overall organizational strategy and2519culture of the enterprise. [HOTLE] It specifies the decision rights and accountability framework to2520encourage desirable behaviors [WEILL] towards realizing the strategy and defines incentives (positive or2521negative) towards that end. It is less about overt control and strict adherence to rules, and more about2522guidance and effective and equitable usage of resources to ensure sustainability of an organization's2523strategic objectives. [TOGAF v9]

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 74 of 115 To accomplish this, governance requires organizational structure and processes and must identify who has authority to define and carry out its mandates. It must address the following questions:

- 2526 1. what decisions must be made to ensure effective management and use?,
- 2527 2. who should make these decisions?,
- 2528 3. how will these decisions be made and monitored?, and
- 2529 4. how will these decisions be communicated?
- 2530 The intent is to achieve goals, add value, and reduce risk.

Within a single ownership domain such as an enterprise, generally there is a hierarchy of governance
 structures. Some of the more common enterprise governance structures include corporate governance,
 technology governance, IT governance, and architecture governance [TOGAF v9]. These governance
 structures can exist at multiple levels (global, regional, and local) within the overall enterprise.

11 It is often asserted that SOA governance is a specialization of IT governance as there is a natural hierarchy of these types of governance structures; however, the focus of SOA governance is less on decisions to ensure effective management and use of IT as it is to ensure effective management and use of SOA-based systems. Certainly, SOA governance must still answer the basic questions also associated with IT governance, i.e., who should make the decisions, and how these decisions will be made and monitored.

2541 5.1.1.2 Relationship to Management

2542 There is often confusion centered on the relationship between governance and management. As 2543 described earlier, governance is concerned with decision making. Management, on the other hand, is 2544 concerned with execution. Put another way, governance describes the world as leadership wants it to be; management executes activities that intend to make the leadership's desired world a reality. Where 2545 2546 governance determines who has the authority and responsibility for making decisions and the 2547 establishment of guidelines for how those decisions should be made, management is the actual process of making, implementing, and measuring the impact of those decisions. Consequently, governance and 2548 2549 management work in concert to ensure a well-balanced and functioning organization as well as an ecosystem of inter-related organizations. In the sections that follow, we elaborate further on the 2550 2551 relationship between governance and management in terms of setting and enforcing service policies, contracts, and standards as well as addressing issues surrounding regulatory compliance. 2552

2553 5.1.1.3 Why is SOA Governance Important?

One of the hallmarks of SOA that distinguishes it from other architectural paradigms for distributed computing is the ability to provide a uniform means to offer, discover, interact with and use capabilities (as well the ability to compose new capabilities from existing ones) all in an environment that transcends domains of ownership. Consequently, ownership, and issues surrounding it, such as obtaining acceptable terms and conditions (T&Cs) in a contract, is one of the primary topics for SOA governance. Generally, IT governance does not include T&Cs, for example, as a condition of use as its primary concern.

2560 Just as other architectural paradigms, technologies, and approaches to IT are subject to change and evolution, so too is SOA. Setting policies that allow change management and evolution, establishing strategies for change, resolving disputes that arise, and ensuring that SOA-based systems continue to fulfill the goals of the business are all reasons why governance is important to SOA.

2564 5.1.1.4 Governance Stakeholders and Concerns

As noted in Section 3.2.1 the participants in a service interaction include the service provider, the service consumer, and other interested or unintentional third parties. Depending on the circumstances, it may also include the owners of the underlying capabilities that the SOA services access. Governance must establish the policies and rules under which duties and responsibilities are defined and the expectations of participants are grounded. The expectations include transparency in aspects where transparency is mandated; trust in the impartial and consistent application of governance; and assurance of reliable and robust behavior throughout the SOA ecosystem.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 75 of 115

5.1.2 A Generic Model for Governance 2572

2573 Governance

2574 The prescription of conditions and constraints consistent with satisfying common goals and the 2575 structures and processes needed to define and respond to actions taken towards realizing those 2576 goals.

2577 The following is a generic model of governance represented by segmented models that begin with

2578 motivation and proceed through measuring compliance. It is not all-encompassing but a focused subset

that captures the aspects necessary to describe governance for SOA. It does not imply that practical 2579

2580 application of governance is a single, isolated instance of these models; in reality, there may be 2581 hierarchical and parallel chains of governance that deal with different aspects or focus on different goals.

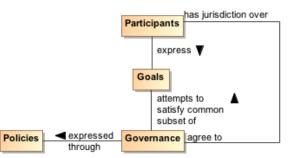
2582 This is discussed further in section 5.1.2.5. The defined models are simultaneously applicable to each of

2583 the overlapping instances.

2584 A given enterprise may already have portions of these models in place. To a large extent, the models

2585 shown here are not specific to SOA; discussions on direct applicability begin in section 5.1.3.

5.1.2.1 Motivating Governance 2586



2587 2588

Figure 35 - Motivating Governance

2589 An organizational domain such as an enterprise is made up of participants who may be individuals or 2590 groups of individuals forming smaller organizational units within the enterprise. The overall business 2591 strategy should be consistent with the goals of the participants; otherwise, the business strategy would 2592 not provide value to the participants and governance towards those ends becomes difficult if not 2593 impossible. This is not to say that an instance of governance simultaneously satisfies all the goals of all 2594 the participants; rather, the goals of any governance instance must sufficiently satisfy a useful subset of

each participant's goals so as to provide value and ensure the cooperation of all the participants. 2595

2596 A policy is the formal characterization of the conditions and constraints that governance deems as 2597 necessary to realize the goals which it is attempting to satisfy. Policy may identify required conditions or 2598 actions or may prescribe limitations or other constraints on permitted conditions or actions. For example, a policy may prescribe that safeguards must be in place to prevent unauthorized access to sensitive 2599 2600 material. It may also prohibit use of computers for activities unrelated to the specified work assignment. Policy is made operational through the promulgation and implementation of Rules and Regulations (as 2601

defined in section 5.1.2.3). 2602

As noted in section 4.4.2, policy may be asserted by any participant or on behalf of the participant by its 2603 organization. Part of the purpose of governance is to arbitrate among diverse goals of participants and 2604 2605 the diverse policies articulated to realize those goals. The intent is to form a consistent whole that allows governance to minimize ambiguity about its purpose. While resolving all ambiguity would be an ideal, it is 2606 2607 unlikely that all inconsistencies will be identified and resolved before governance becomes operational.

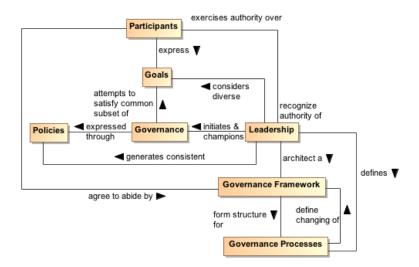
For governance to have effective jurisdiction over participants, there must be some degree of agreement 2608 2609 by all participants that they will abide by the governance mandates. A minimal degree of agreement often presages participants who 'slow-roll' if not actively rejecting compliance with policies that express the 2610

2611 specifics of governance.

> soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 76 of 115

5.1.2.2 Setting Up Governance 2612



2613

2614

Figuro	26 -	Sotting	1 In	Governance
rigure	30 -	Setting	Up	Governance

2615 Leadership

2616 The entity having the responsibility and authority to generate consistent policies through which the goals of governance can be expressed and to define and champion the structures and 2617 2618 processes through which governance is realized.

2619 **Governance Framework**

2620 The set of organizational structures that enable governance to be consistently defined, clarified, 2621 and as needed, modified to respond to changes in its domain of concern.

2622 **Governance Process**

2623 The defined set of activities performed within the Governance Framework to enable the 2624 consistent definition, application, and as needed, modification of rules that organize and regulate 2625 the activities of participants for the fulfillment of expressed policies.

2626 See section 5.1.2.3 for elaboration on the relationship of Governance Processes and Rules.

2627 As noted earlier, governance requires an appropriate organizational structure and identification of who

has authority to make governance decisions. In Figure 36, the entity with governance authority is 2628

2629 designated the Leadership. This is someone, possibly one or more of the participants, which participants 2630 recognize as having authority for a given purpose or over a given set of issues or concerns.

2631 The leadership is responsible for prescribing or delegating a working group to prescribe the governance framework that forms the structure for governance processes that define how governance is to be carried 2632

2633 out. This does not itself define the specifics of how governance is to be applied, but it does provide an 2634 unambiguous set of procedures that should ensure consistent actions which participants agree are fair

2635 and account for sufficient input on the subjects to which governance is applied.

2636 The participants may be part of the working group that codifies the governance framework and 2637 processes. When complete, the participants must acknowledge and agree to abide by the products

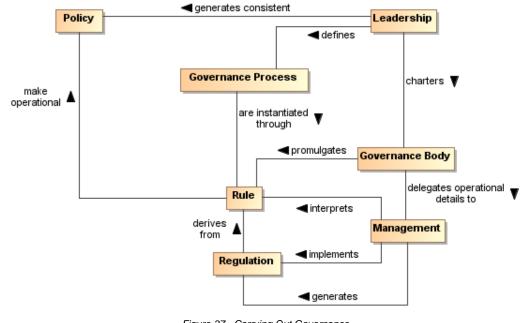
- 2638 generated through application of this structure.
- 2639 The governance framework and processes are often documented in the constitution or charter of a body 2640 created or designated to oversee governance. This is discussed further in the next section. Note that the
- 2641 governance processes should also include those necessary to modify the governance framework itself.
- 2642 An important function of leadership is not only to initiate but also be the consistent champion of 2643 governance. Those responsible for carrying out governance mandates must have leadership who make it

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 77 of 115

2644 clear to participants that expressed policies are seen as a means to realizing established goals and that

compliance with governance is required.

2646 5.1.2.3 Carrying Out Governance



2647 2648

2650

2651

Figure 37 - Carrying Out Governance

2649 Rule

A prescribed guide for carrying out activities and processes leading to desired results, e.g. the operational realization of **policies**.

2652 Regulation

A mandated process or the specific details that derive from the interpretation of **rules** and lead to measureable quantities against which compliance can be measured.

To carry out governance, leadership charters a governance body to promulgate the rules needed to make 2655 2656 the policies operational. The governance body acts in line with governance processes for its rule-making 2657 process and other functions. Whereas governance is the setting of policies and defining the rules that 2658 provide an operational context for policies, governance body may delegate the operational details of 2659 governance to management. Management generates regulations that specify details for rules and other 2660 procedures to implement both rules and regulations. For example, leadership could set a policy that all 2661 authorized parties should have access to data, the governance body would promulgate a rule that PKI 2662 certificates are required to establish identity of authorized parties, and management can specify a 2663 regulation of who it deems to be a recognized PKI issuing body. In summary, policy is a predicate to be 2664 satisfied and rules prescribe the activities by which that satisfying occurs. A number of rules may be 2665 required to satisfy a given policy; the carrying out of a rule may contribute to several policies being 2666 realized. 2667 Whereas the governance framework and processes are fundamental for having participants acknowledge

whereas the governance framework and processes are fundamental for having participants acknowledge
 and commit to compliance with governance, the rules and regulations provide operational constraints that
 may require resource commitments or other levies on the participants. It is important for participants to
 consider the framework and processes to be fair, unambiguous, and capable of being carried out in a
 consistent manner and to have an opportunity to formally accept or ratify this situation. rules Rules and

regulations, however, do not require individual acceptance by any given participant although some level

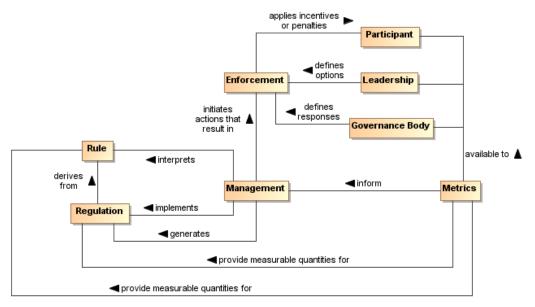
soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Ec Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 78 of 115 Comment [PFB39]: Issue #313 - 21

2673 of community comment may be part of the governance processes. Having agreed to governance, the

2674 participants are bound to comply or be subject to prescribed mechanisms for enforcement.

2675 5.1.2.4 Ensuring Governance Compliance



2676 2677

Figure 38 - Ensuring Governance Compliance

Setting rules and regulations does not ensure effective governance unless compliance can be measured
and rules and regulations can be enforced. Metrics are those conditions and quantities that can be
measured to characterize actions and results. Rules and regulations must be based on collected metrics
or there is no means for management to assess compliance. The metrics are available to the participants,
the leadership, and the governance body so what is measured and the results of measurement are clear
to everyone.

2684 The leadership in its relationship with participants has certain options that can be used for enforcement. A 2685 common option may be to affect future funding. The governance body defines specific enforcement 2686 responses, such as what degree of compliance is necessary for full funding to be restored. It is up to

2687 management to identify compliance shortfalls and to initiate the enforcement process.

Note, enforcement does not strictly need to be negative consequences. Management can use metrics to
 identify exemplars of compliance and leadership can provide options for rewarding the participants. The
 governance body defines awards or other incentives.

2691 5.1.2.5 Considerations for Multiple Governance Chains

As noted in section 5.1.2, instances of the governance model often occur as a tiered arrangement, with governance at some level delegating specific authority and responsibility to accomplish a focused portion of the original level's mandate. For example, a corporation may encompass several lines of business and each line of business governs its own affairs in a manner that is consistent with and contributes to the goals of the parent organization. Within the line of business, an IT group may be given the mandate to provide and maintain IT resources, giving rise to IT governance.

In addition to tiered governance, there may be multiple governance chains working in parallel. For
example, a company making widgets has policies intended to ensure they make high quality widgets and
make an impressive profit for their shareholders. On the other hand, Sarbanes-Oxley is a parallel

2701 governance chain in the United States that specifies how the management must handle its accounting

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 79 of 115 and information that must be given to its shareholders. The parallel chains may just be additive or may be in conflict and require some harmonization.

2704 Being distributed and representing different ownership domains, a SOA participant falls under the

2705 jurisdiction of multiple governance domains simultaneously and may individually need to resolve

2706 consequent conflicts. The governance domains may specify precedence for governance conformance or

it may fall to the discretion of the participant to decide on the course of actions they believe appropriate.

2708 5.1.3 Governance Applied to SOA

2709 5.1.3.1 Where SOA Governance is Different

2710 SOA governance is often discussed in terms of IT governance, but rather than a parent-child relationship, 2711 Figure 39 shows the two as siblings within the general governance described in section 5.1.2. There are obvious dependencies and a need for coordination between the two, but the idea of aligning IT with 2712 2713 business already demonstrates that resource providers and resource consumers must be working 2714 towards common goals if they are to be productive and efficient. While SOA governance is shown to be active in the area of infrastructure, it is a specialized concern for having a dependable platform to support 2715 2716 service interaction; a range of traditional IT issues is therefore out of scope of this document. A SOA 2717 governance plan for an enterprise will not of itself resolve shortcomings with the enterprise's IT 2718 governance. 2719 Governance in the context of SOA is that organization of services: that promotes their visibility; that 2720 facilitates interaction among service participants; and that directs that the results of service interactions 2721 are those real world effects as described within the service description and constrained by policies and

2722 contracts as assembled in the execution context.

SOA governance must specifically account for control across different ownership domains, i.e. all the participants may not be under the jurisdiction of a single governance authority. However, for governance to be effective, the participants must agree to recognize the authority of the governance body and must

2726 operate within the Governance Framework and through the Governance Processes so defined.

SOA governance must account for interactions across ownership boundaries, which may also imply
 across enterprise governance boundaries. For such situations, governance emphasizes the need for
 agreement that some governance framework and governance processes have jurisdiction, and the
 governance defined must satisfy the goals of the participants for cooperation to continue. A standards
 development organization such as OASIS is an example of voluntary agreement to governance over a

2732 limited domain to satisfy common goals.

The specifics discussed in the figures in the previous sections are equally applicable to governance across ownership boundaries as it is within a single boundary. There is a charter agreed to when

2735 participants become members of the organization, and this charter sets up the structures and processes

2736 to be followed. Leadership may be shared by the leadership of the overall organization and the leadership

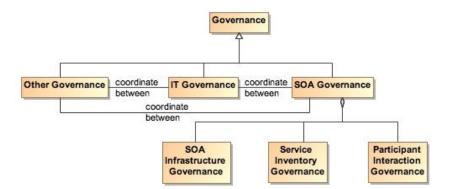
- of individual groups themselves chartered per the governance processes. There are rules and regulations specific to individual efforts for which participants agree to local goals, and enforcement can be loss of
- 2739 voting rights or under extreme circumstances, expulsion from the group.
- Thus, the major difference for SOA governance is an appreciation for the cooperative nature of the enterprise and its reliance on furthering common goals if productive participation is to continue.

2742 5.1.3.2 What Must be Governed

An expected benefit of employing SOA principles is the ability to quickly bring resources to bear to deal with unexpected and evolving situations. This requires a great deal of confidence in the underlying capabilities that can be accessed and in the services that enable the access. It also requires considerable flexibility in the ways these resources can be employed. Thus, SOA governance requires establishing confidence and trust (see Section 3.2.5.1) while instituting a solid framework that enables flexibility, indicating a combination of strict control over a limited set of foundational aspects but minimum constraints beyond those bounds.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 80 of 115

²⁷⁵⁰



2751 2752

Figure 39 - Relationship Among Types of Governance

- 2753 SOA governance applies to three aspects of service definition and use:
- SOA infrastructure the 'plumbing' that provides utility functions that enable and support the use of the service
- Service inventory the requirements on a service to permit it to be accessed within the infrastructure
- Participant interaction the consistent expectations with which all participants are expected to comply

2760 5.1.3.2.1 Governance of SOA Infrastructure

2761 The SOA infrastructure is likely composed of several families of SOA services that provide access to fundamental computing business services. These include, among many others, services such as messaging, security, storage, discovery, and mediation. The provisioning of an infrastructure on which these services may be accessed and the general realm of those contributing as utility functions of the infrastructure are a traditional IT governance concern. In contrast, the focus of SOA governance is how the existence and use of the services enables the SOA ecosystem.

2767 By characterizing the environment as containing families of SOA services, the assumption is that there 2768 may be multiple approaches to providing the business services or variations in the actual business 2769 services provided. For example, discovery could be based on text search, on metadata search, on 2770 approximate matches when exact matches are not available, and numerous other variations. The 2771 underlying implementation of search algorithms are not the purview of SOA governance, but the access to the resulting service infrastructure enabling discovery must be stable, reliable, and extremely robust to 2772 all operating conditions. Such access enables other specialized SOA services to use the infrastructure in 2773 dependable and predictable ways, and is where governance is important. 2774

2775 5.1.3.2.2 Governance of the Service Inventory

Given an infrastructure in which other SOA services can operate, a key governance issue is which SOA
services to allow in the ecosystem. The major concern should be a definition of well-behaved services,
where the required behavior will inherit their characteristics from experiences with distributed computing
but also evolve with SOA experience. A major need for ensuring well-behaved services is collecting
sufficient metrics to know how the service affects the SOA infrastructure and whether it complies with
established infrastructure policies.

Another common concern of service approval is whether there is a possibility of duplication of function by
multiple services. Some governance models talk to a tightly controlled environment where a primary
concern is to avoid any service duplication. Other governance models talk to a market of services where
the consumers have wide choices. For the latter, it is anticipated that the better services will emerge from
market consensus and the availability of alternatives will drive innovation.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 81 of 115 Some combination of control and openness will emerge, possibly with a different appropriate balance for different categories of use. For SOA governance, the issue is less which services are approved but rather ensuring that sufficient description is available to support informed decisions for appropriate use. Thus, SOA governance should concentrate on identifying the required attributes to adequately describe a service, the required target values of the attributes, and the standards for defining the meaning of the attributes and their target values. Governance may also specify the processes by which the attribute

attributes and their target values. Governance may also specify the processes by which the attribute values are measured and the corresponding certification that some realized attribute set may imply.

For example, unlimited access for using a service may require a degree of life cycle maturity that has demonstrated sufficient testing over a certain size community. Alternately, the policy may specify that a service in an earlier phase of its life cycle may be made available to a smaller, more technically

sophisticated group in order to collect the metrics that would eventually allow the service to advance itslife cycle status.

This aspect of governance is tightly connected to description because, given a well-behaved set of
services, it is the responsibility of the consumer (or policies promulgated by the consumer's organization)
to decide whether a service is sufficient for that consumer's intended use. The goal is to avoid global
governance specifying criteria that are too restrictive or too lax for local needs of which global governance
has little insight.

Such an approach to specifying governance allows independent domains to describe services in local
 terms while still having the services available for informed use across domains. In addition, changes to
 the attribute sets within a domain can be similarly described, thus supporting the use of newly described

2807 resources with the existing ones without having to update the description of the entire legacy content.

2808 5.1.3.2.3 Governance of Participant Interaction

2809 Finally, given a reliable services infrastructure and a predictable set of services, the third aspect of 2810 governance is prescribing what is required during a service interaction.

2811 Governance would specify adherence to service interface and service reachability parameters and would 2812 require that the result of an interaction correspond to the real world effects as contained in the service

2813 description. Governance would ensure preconditions for service use are satisfied. in particular those

2814 related to security aspects such as user authentication, authorization, and non-repudiation. If conflicts

arise, governance would specify resolution processes to ensure appropriate agreements, policies, andconditions are met.

2817 It would also rely on sufficient monitoring by the SOA infrastructure to ensure services remain well-

2818 behaved during interactions, e.g. do not use excessive resources or exhibit other prohibited behavior.

2819 Governance would also require that policy agreements as documented in the execution context for the

interaction are observed and that the results and any after effects are consistent with the agreed policies.

- Here, governance focuses more on contractual and legal aspects rather than the precursor descriptive
- aspects. SOA governance may prescribe the processes by which SOA-specific policies are allowed to change, but there are probably more business-specific policies that will be governed by processes
- 2824 outside SOA governance.

2825 5.1.3.3 Overarching Governance Concerns

2826There are numerous governance related concerns whose effects span the three areas just discussed.2827One is the area of standards, how these are mandated, and how the mandates may change. The Web2828Services standards stack is an example of relevant standards where a significant number are still under2829development. In addition, while there are notional scenarios that guide what standards are being2830developed, the fact that many of these standards do not yet exist precludes operational testing of their2831adequacy or effectiveness as a necessary and sufficient set.

That said, standards are critical to creating a SOA ecosystem where SOA services can be introduced, used singularly, and combined with other services to deliver complex business functionality. As with other aspects of SOA governance, the governance body should identify the minimum set felt to be needed and rigorously enforce that that set be used where appropriate. The governance body takes care to expand and evolve the mandated standards in a predictable manner and with sufficient technical guidance that new services are able to coexist as much as possible with the old, and changes to standards do not cause major disruptions.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 82 of 115 Another area that may see increasing activity as SOA expands is additional regulation by governments and associated legal institutions. New laws may deal with transactions that are service based, possibly including taxes on the transactions. Disclosure laws may mandate certain elements of description so both the consumer and provider act in a predictable environment and are protected from ambiguity in intent or action. Such laws spawn rules and regulations that will influence the metrics collected for evaluation of compliance.

2845 5.1.3.4 Considerations for SOA Governance

The Reference Architecture definition of a loosely coupled system is one in which the constraints on the
 interactions between components are minimal vet sufficient to permit interoperation without additional
 constraints that may be an artifact of implementation technology. While governance experience for
 standalone systems provides useful guides, we must be careful not to apply constraints that would
 preclude the flexibility, agility, and adaptability we expect to realize from a SOA ecosystem.

One of the strengths of the SOA paradigm is it can make effective use of diversity rather than requiring 2851 2852 monolithic solutions. Heterogeneous organizations can interact without requiring each conforms to 2853 uniform tools, representation, and processes. However, with this diversity comes the need to adequately define those elements necessary for consistent interaction among systems and participants, such as 2854 2855 which communication protocol, what level of security, which vocabulary for payload content of messages. The solution is not always to lock down these choices but to standardize alternatives and standardize the 2856 representations through which an unambiguous identification of the alternative chosen can be conveved. 2857 2858 For example, the URI standard specifies the URI string, including what protocol is being used, what is the target of the message, and how parameters may be attached. It does not limit the available protocols, the 2859 2860 semantics of the target address, or the parameters that can be transferred. Thus, as with our definition of 2861 loose coupling, it provides absolute constraints but minimizes which constraints it imposes.

There is not a one-size-fits-all governance but a need to understand the types of things governance is called upon to do in the context of the goals of the SOA paradigm. Some communities may initially desire and require very stringent governance policies and procedures while others see need for very little. Over time, best practices will evolve, resulting in some consensus on a sensible minimum and, except in extreme cases where it is demonstrated to be necessary, a loosening of strict governance toward the best practice mean.

2868 A guestion of how much governance may center on how much time governance activities require versus 2869 how quickly is the system being governed expected to respond to changing conditions. For large single 2870 systems that take years to develop, the governance process could move slowly without having a serious negative impact. For example, if something takes two years to develop and the steps involved in 2871 2872 governance take two months to navigate, then the governance can go along in parallel and may not have a significant impact on system response to changes. Situations where it takes as long to navigate 2873 2874 governance requirements as it does to develop a response are examples where governance may need to 2875 be reevaluated as to whether it facilitates or inhibits the desired results. Thus, the speed at which services are expected to appear and evolve must be considered when deciding the processes for control. The 2876 2877 added weight of governance should be appropriate for overall goals of the application domain and the service environment. 2878

- 2879 Governance, as with other aspects of any SOA implementation, should start small and be conceptualized 2880 in a way that keeps it flexible, scalable, and realistic. A set of useful guidelines would include:
 - Do not hardwire things that will inevitably change. For example, develop a system that uses the representation of policies rather than code the policies into the implementations.
- Avoid setting up processes that demo well for three services without considering how they may work for 300. Similarly, consider whether the display of status and activity for a small number of services will also be effective for an operator in a crisis situation looking at dozens of services, each with numerous, sometimes overlapping and sometimes differing activities.
 Maintain consistency and realism. A service solution responding to a natural disaster cannot be
 - Maintain consistency and realism. A service solution responding to a natural disaster cannot be expected to complete a 6-week review cycle but be effective in a matter of hours.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

2881

2882

2888

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 83 of 115 **Comment [PFB40]:** Issue #313

2889 **5.1.4 Architectural Implications of SOA Governance**

2890 2891	The description of SOA governance indicates numerous architectural requirements on the SOA ecosystem:
2892 2893 2894 2895 2896 2897	 Governance is expressed through policies and assumes multiple use of focused policy modules that can be employed across many common circumstances. The following are thus REQUIRED: descriptions to enable the policy modules to be visible, where the description SHOULD include a unique identifier for the policy as well as a sufficient, and preferably machine process-able, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe the policy, its functions, and its effects;
2898	 one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for policies that best meet the
2899	search criteria specified by a participant; where the discovery mechanism will have
2900	access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository
2901	mechanism;
2902	 accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so participants can access,
2903	examine, and use the policies as defined.
2904	 Governance requires that the participants understand the intent of governance, the structures
2905	created to define and implement governance, and the processes to be followed to make
2906	governance operational. This REQUIRES :
2907	 an information collection site, such as a Web page or portal, where governance
2908	information is stored and from which the information is always available for access;
2909	 a mechanism to inform participants of significant governance events, such as changes in
2910	policies, rules, or regulations;
2911	 accessible storage of the specifics of Governance Processes;
2912	 SOA services to access automated implementations of the Governance Processes
2913	 Governance policies are made operational through rules and regulations. This REQUIRES:
2914	 descriptions to enable the rules and regulations to be visible, where the description
2915	SHOULD include a unique identifier and a sufficient, and preferably a machine process-
2916	able, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe the rules and regulations;
2917	 one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for rules and regulations that
2918	may apply to situations corresponding to the search criteria specified by a participant;
2919	where the discovery mechanism will have access to the individual descriptions of rules
2920	and regulations, possibly through some repository mechanism;
2921	 accessible storage of rules and regulations and their respective descriptions, so
2922	participants can understand and prepare for compliance, as defined.
2923	• SOA services to access automated implementations of the Governance Processes.
2924	Governance implies management to define and enforce rules and regulations. Management is
2925	discussed more specifically in section 5.3, but in a parallel to governance, management
2926	REQUIRES:
2927	 an information collection site, such as a Web page or portal, where management
2928	information is stored and from which the information is always available for access;
2929 2930	 a mechanism to inform participants of significant management events, such as changes
	in rules or regulations;
2931 2932	 accessible storage of the specifics of processes followed by management. Coversance relies on matrice to define and measure compliance. This PEOURES:
2932 2933	Governance relies on metrics to define and measure compliance. This REQUIRES : the infractructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources:
2933 2934	 the infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources; possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated or
2934 2935	most easily accessed by the service itself.
2900	וווטטו במאוץ מנוכססבע אין וווב סבו יווב ווסבוו.
2936	5.2 Security Model

2937 Security is one aspect of confidence – the confidence in the integrity, reliability, and confidentiality of the 2938 system. In particular, security in a SOA ecosystem focuses on those aspects of assurance that involve

system. In particular, security in a SOA ecosystem focuses on those aspects of assurance that involve
 the accidental or malicious intent of other people to damage, compromise trust, or hinder the availability
 of SOA-based systems to perform desired capability.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 84 of 115

2941 Security

2942 The set of mechanisms for ensuring and enhancing **trust** and confidence in the **SOA ecosystem**.

Although many of the same principles apply equally to SOA as they do to other systems, implementing security for a SOA ecosystem is somewhat different than for other contexts. The distributed nature of SOA brings challenges related to the protection of resources against inappropriate access, and because SOA embraces the crossing of ownership boundaries, the security issues associated with the movement of data and access to functionality become more apparent in a SOA ecosystem.

- From a people perspective, Any comprehensive security solution for a SOA-based system must take into account that people are effectively managing, maintaining, and utilizing the system appropriately. The
- roles and responsibilities of the usersactors, and the relationships between them must also be explicitly
 understood and incorporated into a solution: any security assertions that may be associated with
 particular interactions originate in the people that are behind the interaction.
- 2953 We analyze security in terms of the social structures that define the legitimate permissions, obligations 2954 and roles of people in relation to the system, and mechanisms that must be put into place to realize a 2955 secure system. The former are typically captured in a series of security policy statements; the latter in 2956 terms of security guards that ensure that policies are enforced.
- 2957 How and when to apply these derived security policy mechanisms is directly associated with the
- 2958 assessment of the threat model and a security response model. The threat model identifies the kinds of
- threats that directly impact the messages, services, and/or the application of constraints. The response
- model is the proposed mitigation to those threats. Properly implemented, the result can be an acceptable level of risk to the safety and integrity within the SOA ecosystem.
- 2301 level of tisk to the safety and integrity within the SOA ecosy

2962 5.2.1 Secure Interaction Concepts

- 2963 We can characterize secure interactions in terms of key security concepts [ISO/IEC 27002]:
- confidentiality, integrity, authentication, authorization, non-repudiation, and availability. The concepts for
 secure interactions are well -defined in several other standards and publications. The security concepts
 are therefore not explicitly defined here, but are discussed related to the SOA ecosystem perspective of
 the SOA-RAF.
- Related to the security goals in this section, there may be significant security policy differences between participants in different ownership domains. It is therefore important that these security policies and security parameters are negotiated at the start of the relationship between systems of differing ownership domains, and also when policies change between these domains. As with other policy conflicts, this is not to say that every policy negotiation is a custom, point-to-point interaction. Rather, common mechanisms
- and policies should be well known and appropriately accessible so the negotiation can be efficient and
- 2974 lead to predictable conclusions. Unnecessary complexity does not lead to effective security.

2975 5.2.1.1 Confidentiality

- 2976 Confidentiality is concerned with the protection of privacy of participants in their interactions.
- 2977 Confidentiality refers to the assurance that unauthorized entities are not able to read messages or parts
- 2978 of messages that are transmitted, and is typically implemented by using encryption. Confidentiality has 2979 degrees: in a completely confidential exchange, third parties would not even be aware that a confidential 2980 exchange has occurred. In some cases, the identities of the participants may be known but the content of 2981 the exchange obscured. In other cases, only portions of sensitive data in the exchange are encrypted.
- Different ownership domains may have policies related to encryption mechanisms between consumers and providers, and such policies need to be negotiated and understood prior to any interaction.

2984 5.2.1.2 Integrity

2985 Integrity refers to the assurance that information has not been altered in transit, and is concerned with the 2986 protection of information that is exchanged – either from inadvertent or intentional corruption. Section

- 2986 protection of mormation that is exchanged either from madvenent of intentional corruption. Section
 2987 5.2.4 describes common computing techniques for providing both confidentiality and integrity during
- 2988 message exchanges.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 85 of 115 **Comment [PFB41]:** Issue #312 - 12

2989 5.2.1.3 Authentication

2990 Authentication is concerned with adequately identifying actors in a potential interaction or joint action. 2991 Various mechanisms and protocols can be used to achieve this goal. A combination of identifiers (as discussed in section 3.2.4.1) and other attributes of an actor is typically used to achieve this. The set of 2992 attribute values that claim to identify a specific actor are matched against the set of reference values 2993 expected for that actor and that are maintained by some trusted authority. If the comparison results in a 2994 2995 sufficient match, authentication has been achieved. Which specific set of attributes is considered an 2996 adequate basis for comparison will be context-dependent and specifying such sets is not within the scope 2997 of the SOA-RAF.

In addition to the concern of adequately identifying each actor involved in the interaction, there may also be a need to provide authentication information related to the subject that initiated an interaction involving the combination of intermediary actors in a service orchestration scenario. In such a case, consumers and services work *on behalf of* the initiator of the interaction, and there may need to be mechanisms in place to identify the interaction initiator. This concern is covered later in section 5.2.5.

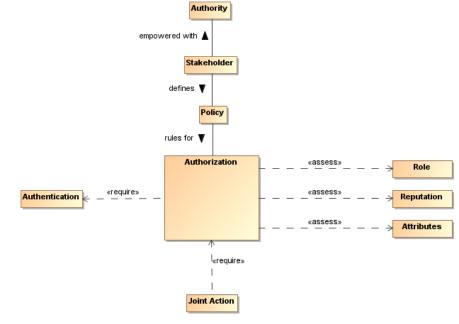
3003 Authentication merely provides an assertion that an actor is the person or agent that it claims to be. Of

3004 itself, it does not provide a 'green light' to proceed with the interaction – this is rather the concern of **authorization**. covered below.

3005 **authorization**, covered below.

3006 5.2.1.4 Authorization

- 3007 Authorization concerns the legitimacy of the interaction, providing assurance that the actors have
- 3008 permission to participate in the interaction. Authorization refers to the means by which a stakeholder may
- 3009 be assured that the information and actions that are exchanged are either explicitly or implicitly approved.



3010 3011

Figure 40 - Authorization

- 3012 The role of access control policy for security is to permit stakeholders to express their choices. In Figure
- 3013 40, such a policy is a written constraint and the role, reputation, and attribute assertions of actors are 3014 evaluated according to the constraints in the authorization policy. A combination of security mechanisms
- 3015 and their control via explicit policies can form the basis of an authorization solution.
- The roles and attributes which provide a participant's credentials are expanded to include reputation.
 Reputation often helps determine willingness to interact; for example, reviews of a service provider will
 - soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1
 Edits to CSPRD03
 02 November 2012

 Standards Track Work Product
 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.
 Page 86 of 115

3018 influence the decision to interact with the service provider. The roles, reputation, and attributes are 3019 represented as assertions measured by authorization decision points.

3020 5.2.1.5 Non-repudiation

3021 Non-repudiation concerns the accountability of participants. To foster trust in the performance of a system

3022 used to conduct shared activities, it is important that the participants are not able to later deny their

3023 actions: to repudiate them. Non-repudiation refers to the means by which a participant may not, at a later time, successfully deny having participated in the interaction or having performed the actions as reported

- 3024
- by other participants. 3025

5.2.1.6 Availability 3026

3027 Availability concerns the ability of systems to use and offer the services for which they were designed. An 3028 example of threats against availability is a Denial Of Service (DoS) attack in which attackers attempt to 3029 prevent legitimate access to service or set of services by flooding them with bogus requests. As

3030 functionality is distributed into services in a SOA ecosystem, availability protection is paramount.

3031 5.2.2 Where SOA Security is Different

3032 The distributed nature of the SOA ecosystem brings challenges related to the protection of resources

against inappropriate access, and because the SOA paradigm embraces the crossing of ownership 3033

3034 boundaries, providing security in such an environment provides unique challenges. The evolution of 3035 sharing information within a SOA ecosystem requires the flexibility to dynamically secure computing

interactions where the owning social groups, roles, and authority are constantly changing as described in 3036 3037 section 5.1.3.1.

3038 Standards for security, as is the case with all aspects of SOA implementation and use, play a large role in 3039 flexible security on a global scale. SOA security may also involve greater auditing and reporting to adhere

3040 to regulatory compliance established by governance structures.

5.2.3 Security Threats 3041

3042 There are a number of ways in which an attacker may attempt to compromise the security within a SOA 3043 ecosystem, primarily as attacks on the security concerns listed in section 5.2.1. The two primary sources 3044 of attack are (1) third parties attempting to subvert interactions between legitimate participants; and (2) 3045 entities that are participating but attempting to subvert other participants.

In a SOA ecosystem where there may be multiple ownership boundaries and trust boundaries, it is 3046 important to understand these threats and protections that must be effective. Each technology choice in 3047 3048 the realization of a SOA-based system can potentially have many threats to consider. Although these 3049 threats are not unique to SOA and can be mitigated by applying cryptographic techniques (digital signatures, encryption, and various cryptographic protocols) and security technologies, it is important that 3050

3051 such threats are understood in order to provide solutions for thwarting such attacks and minimizing risk.

5.2.3.1 Message alteration 3052

3053 If an attacker is able to modify the content (or even the order) of messages that are exchanged without 3054 the legitimate participants being aware of it then the attacker has successfully compromised the security 3055 of the system. In effect, the participants may unwittingly serve the needs of the attacker rather than their 3056 own. Cryptographic mechanisms (hash codes, digital signatures, and cryptographic protocols) can be used as a protection mechanism against alteration. 3057

5.2.3.2 Message interception 3058

3059 If an attacker is able to intercept and understand messages exchanged between participants, then the 3060 attacker may be able to gain advantage. Cryptographic protocols can be used as a protection against 3061 interception.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 87 of 115

3062 **5.2.3.3 Man in the middle**

3063 In a man-in-the-middle attack, the legitimate participants believe that they are interacting with each other; 3064 but are in fact interacting with an attacker. The attacker attempts to convince each participant that he is 3065 their correspondent; whereas in fact he is not.

3066 In a successful man-in-the-middle attack, legitimate participants do not have an accurate understanding 3067 of the state of the other participants. The attacker can use this to subvert the intentions of the participants.

3068 5.2.3.4 Spoofing

3069 In a spoofing attack, the attacker convinces a participant that he is another party.

3070 5.2.3.5 Denial of service attack

3071 A Denial of Service (DoS) attack is an attack on the availability and performance of a service or set of services. In a DoS attack, the attacker attempts to prevent legitimate users from making use of the 3072 3073 service. A DoS attack is easy to mount and can cause considerable harm by preventing legitimate interactions in a SOA ecosystem, or by slowing them down enough, the attacker may be able to 3074 3075 simultaneously prevent legitimate access to a service and to attack the service by another means. One of the features of a DoS attack is that it does not require valid interactions to be effective: responding to 3076 3077 invalid messages also takes resources and that may be sufficient to cripple the target. A variation of the 3078 DoS attack is the Distributed Denial of Service (DDoS) attack, where an attacker uses multiple agents to the attack the target. 3079

3080 5.2.3.6 Replay attack

3081 In a replay attack, the attacker captures the message traffic during a legitimate interaction and then 3082 replays part of it to the target. The target is persuaded that an interaction similar to the previous one is 3083 being repeated and it responds as though it were a legitimate interaction.

3084 5.2.3.7 False repudiation

 3085
 In false repudiation, a user completes a normal interaction is completed but an actor and then later
 Comment [PFB44]: Issue #312 - 14

 3086
 attempts to deny that the interaction occurred.
 14

3087 5.2.4 Security Responses

Security goals are never absolute: it is not possible to guarantee 100% confidentiality, non-repudiation, etc. However, a well-designed and implemented security response model can reduce security risk to acceptable levels. For example, using a well-designed cipher to encrypt messages may make the cost of breaking communications so great and so lengthy that the information obtained is valueless.

Performing threat assessments, devising mitigation strategies, and determining acceptable levels of risk are the foundation for an effective process to mitigating threats in a cost-effective way.¹⁰ Architectural

choices, as well as choices in hardware and software to realize a SOA implementation will be used as the
 basis for threat assessments and mitigation strategies.

3096 5.2.4.1 Privacy Enforcement

The most efficient mechanism to assure confidentiality is the encryption of information. Encryption is particularly important when messages must cross trust boundaries; especially over the Internet. Note that

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 88 of 115 Comment [PFB42]: Issue #312 -

Comment [PFB43]: Issue #313

13

- 23

¹⁰ In practice, there are perceptions of security from all participants regardless of ownership boundaries. Satisfying security policy often requires asserting sensitive information about the message initiator. The perceptions of this participant about information privacy may be more important than actual security enforcement within the SOA ecosystem for this stakeholder.

- 3099 encryption need not be limited to the content of messages: it is possible to obscure even the existence of
- 3100 messages themselves through encryption and 'white noise' generation in the communications channel.
- 3101 The specifics of encryption are beyond the scope of this Reference Architecture Framework. However, we 3102 are concerned about how the connection between privacy-related policies and their enforcement is made.
- 3103 Service contracts may express confidentiality security policies and the cryptographic mechanisms
- 3104 required (e.g. ciphers, cryptographic protocols). Between ownership boundaries, there may also be
- 3105 similar security policies that define requirements for privacy between them. Between such boundaries,
- 3106 there may be a Policy Enforcement Point (PEP) for enforcing such requirements which may, for example,
- 3107 automatically encrypt messages as they leave a trust boundary; or perhaps simply ensuring that such
- 3108 messages are suitably encrypted in such a way as to comply with the policy.

3109 5.2.4.2 Integrity Protection

- 3110 To protect against message tampering or inadvertent message alteration, messages may be
- 3111 accompanied by the digital signature of the hash code of a message. Any alteration of the message or
- 3112 signature would result in a failed signature validation, indicating an integrity compromise. Digital
- 3113 signatures therefore provide a mechanism for integrity protection.
- 3114 A digital signature also provides non-repudiation, which is an assurance of proof that a subject signed a
- 3115 message. Utilizing a digital signature algorithm based on public key cryptography, a digital signature
- 3116 cryptographically binds the signer of the message to its contents, ensuring that the signer cannot
- 3117 successfully deny sending the message.
- 3118 The use of a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) provides the support and infrastructure for digital signature
- capabilities, and there may also be security policies related to digital signatures between organizational
 boundaries, as well as trust relationships between multiple Certificate Authorities (CAs) across the
- 3121 boundaries.

3122 5.2.4.3 Message Replay Protection

- 3123 To protect against replay attacks, messages may also contain information that can be used to detect 3124 replayed messages. A common approach involves the use of a message ID, a timestamp, and the 3125 message's intended destination, signed along with the message itself. A message recipient may be able 3126 to thwart a message replay attack by
- checking to ensure that it has previously not processed the message ID
- validating that the timestamp is within a certain time threshold to ensure message freshness
- ensuring that the recipient is indeed the intended destination
- validating the digital signature, which provides non-repudiation of the message sender and checks the integrity of the message ID, timestamp, the destination, and the message itself, proving that none of the information was altered
- 3133 Cryptographic protocols between participants can also be used to thwart replay attacks.

3134 5.2.4.4 Auditing and Logging

- 3135 False repudiation involves a participant denying that it authorized a previous interaction. In addition to the
- 3136 use of digital signatures, an effective strategy for responding to such a denial involves logging of 3137 interactions and the ability to audit the resulting logs. The more detailed and comprehensive an audit trail
- is, the less likely it is that a false repudiation would be successful.
- 3139 Given the distributed nature of the SOA ecosystem, one challenge revolves around the location of the
- audit logs of services. It would be very difficult, for example, to do cross-log analysis of services that write logs to their own file system. For this reason, a common approach revolves around the use of auditing
- 3141 logs to their own file system. For this reason, a common approach revolves around the use of auditing 3142 services, where services may stream auditing information to a common auditing component which can
- 3143 then be used to provide interaction analysis and a common view.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 89 of 115

3144 5.2.4.5 Graduated engagement

3145 Although many DoS attacks can typically be thwarted by intrusion detection systems, they are sometimes 3146 difficult to detect because requests to services seem to be legitimate. It is therefore prudent to be careful 3147 in the use of resources when responding to requests. If a known consumer tries to interact via a public interface that is not specified in the service contract, a service is not obliged to notice such an interaction 3148 request. In order to avoid vulnerability to DoS attacks, a service provider should be careful not to commit 3149 3150 resources beyond those implied by the current state of interactions; this permits a graduation in 3151 commitment by the service provider that mirrors any commitment on the part of service consumers and attackers alike. A successful approach, however, cannot be implemented at the service-level alone - it 3152 3153 involves a defense-in-depth strategy, coupling the use of intrusion detection systems, routers, firewalls, and providing the protections discussed in this section. 3154

3155 5.2.5 Access Control

3156 5.2.5.1 Conveying Authentication and Authorization Information

3157 When an actor initiates an interaction with a service, that service may call other services or be part of a chain of service interactions as it carries out its functionality. Any service provider is aware of the 3158 immediate service consumer but, in some cases, for example, to provide proper access control to its data, 3159 3160 a service provider may want information on who besides the immediate consumer is expected to see the 3161 data that is being requested. A significant question is whether trust of the immediate consumer should 3162 include trust that the immediate consumer will ensure proper data handling by its immediate consumer 3163 and back through any chain of service interactions. If this is not sufficient, conveying authentication and authorization information becomes a necessity, and the challenge becomes one of creating a conveyance 3164 process that gives more assurance than merely trust of the immediate consumer. This is a challenge both 3165 3166 within and between ownership domains. 3167 The security concerns related to conveying authentication and authorization information throughout 3168 intermediaries introduce significant complexity. Although an actor may directly authenticate to a service 3169 provider, that service provider may interact with other service providers in order to carry out its 3170

3170 functionality, possibly without the knowledge of the initiator. There may therefore be privacy and 3171 confidentiality concerns related to conveying security information about the initiating actor. There may

also be issues related to authorization, in that the initiating actor may need to explicitly delegate consent

3173 for intermediate services to act on the initiator's behalf.

The following sections cover two approaches for conveying authentication and authorization information in a SOA ecosystem. These approaches involves conveying sufficient attributes, as discussed in section 5.2.1.3, which may be a single unique identifier or a set of identifiers that can be used in access control

3177 decisions.

3178 In the first approach, the service consumer creates and passes an assertion about the initiating actor. In

- 3179 the second approach, a service is trusted to issue assertions about subjects. Each has specific
- 3180 implications for a SOA ecosystem.

3181 5.2.5.1.1 Sender-Vouches Approaches

In a "sender vouches" approach, a service consumer creates an assertion, *vouching* for certain security information about the initiator of the interaction, and possible about other actors in a series (chain) of service interactions. This assertion contains sufficient attributes that can be used in access control decisions, and is sent, or propagated, to the service provider. Trust of such an assertion is therefore based on the provider's trust of the consumer, and also there needs to be an understanding of such assertions between ownership boundaries. In a SOA ecosystem, such trust must be established at the beginning of each relationship.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 90 of 115 3189 When such assertions are reused in service orchestration scenarios beyond the initial consumer-provider 3190 interaction, there can be significant security risks¹¹.

- Trust of Message Senders. Because the trust of the assertion is based on the trust of the message senders, the more intermediaries there are, trust can degrade as the distance between the initiator and the service being called becomes greater. Trust may, therefore, be dependent on the trust of every sender in the chain to properly pass the claim.
- Risk of Vulnerabilities in Intermediaries. Because the trust of the assertion relies on the trust of
 each participant in the interaction, a risk is that intermediary services may become compromised
 and may inaccurately send false claims. Depending on the exact messaging syntax, an
 intermediary service could potentially manipulate the assertion or substitute another assertion.
 There could also be impersonation of the intermediary services, affecting the reliability of the
 interaction.
- Approaches for mitigating risks in sender-vouches approaches involve a careful combination of SOA
 security governance, limiting the re-use of assertions beyond a certain number of points, establishing
 conditions of use for propagated assertions, keeping track of the history of the assertion in the interaction,
 and the use of digital signatures by an asserting party.
- Between ownership domains, such an approach is even more challenging, as different ownership domains may recognize different authentication authorities and may not recognize identities from other organizations. Security policies that relate to the conveying of security information across boundaries must occur at the start of the relationship, with many solutions involving reciprocity of trust between
- 3209 authentication and authorization authorities from each domain.

3210 5.2.5.1.2 Token Service-based Approaches

3211 This approach revolves around use of a *token service* or a set of token services trusted to vouch for

- 3212 security information about authenticated actors in the interaction. In this approach, a token service issues 3213 a token which is an assertion that contains sufficient attributes that can be used in access control 3214 decisions. The contributes that taken along with a request to a contribute provider.
- decisions. The service consumer passes this token, along with a request, to a service provider.
- 3215 After the original consumer passes the issued token to the service, the recipient service later acting as a 3216 consumer may then choose to propagate the token to other service providers. Much like the risks 3217 associated with the reuse of assertions in sender-vouches approaches, there are risks associated with 3218 the reuse of tokens issued by the token service beyond the initial consumer-provider interaction. Most 3219 token service protocols and specifications, therefore, provide the capability for "refreshing" tokens for 3220 reuse in such situations. In this case, each actor retrieving a token may request that the token service 3221 issue a "refresh token" that can be propagated for a subsequent service interaction. Utilizing refresh 3222 tokens removes the risks associated with reuse.
- 3223 This approach differs from the sender-vouches model in that trust of the token is not based on the
- 3224 message sender, but is based on the trust of the token service that issued it. In interactions between
- 3225 ownership domains, the establishment of the trust of the token services must be agreed to at the start of
- 3226 the relationship, and there must be an understanding of the policies associated with processing the
- tokens. To facilitate this, token services in one domain can often be used to "translate" tokens from other domains, issuing new tokens that are understood by services and consumers in its domain.
- 3229 Unlike sender-vouches approaches, the token service approach revolves around a trusted token service 3230 or a set of trusted token services, and there may be architectural implications related to performance and 3231 availability. It is therefore advised that solutions that provide elastic scalability be used to ensure that 3232 token services are readily available to respond to requests.

3233 5.2.5.2 Access Control Approaches

Access control revolves around security policy. If access control policy can be discovered and processed, and if authorization credentials of actors can be retrieved, access control can be successfully enforced.

¹¹ Such risks and others are documented in [SMITH]

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 91 of 115

- Architectural flexibility for authorization is achieved by logically separating duties into Policy Decision 3236 3237 Points (PDPs) and Policy Enforcement Points (PEPs). A PDP is the point at which access control decisions are made, based on an expressed access control policy and an actor's authorization 3238 credentials. The enforcement of the decision is delegated to a PEP. Some standards, such as XACML 3239 (the eXtensible Access Control Markup Language), decompose the policy model further into Policy 3240 Administration Points (PAPs) that create policy and the Policy Information Points (PIPs) that query 3241 attributes for actors requesting access to resources. There are many strategies for how PDPs and PEPs 3242 3243 can work together, each with architectural implications that have an impact on security, performance, and 3244 scalability.
- 3245 As access control policy may vary between ownership domains, the negotiation of access control policies between such domains must occur at the start of the relationship, regardless of the underlying 3246
- 3247 architectural approaches.
- 3248 Different security services implementations may dictate different architectural approaches and have different implications. This section provides a brief overview of such approaches. 3249

5.2.5.2.1 Centralized Access Control Approaches 3250

- 3251 A centralized approach uses a policy server (or a set of policy servers) to act as a PDP, and utilizes the
- current access control policy to make an access control decision for an actor requesting access to a 3252
- 3253 resource. A positive aspect of this approach can be information hiding because services may not need to
- 3254 know the authorization credentials of the actor or the specific policy being enforced. The centralized 3255 model protects that information in cases where this information may be sensitive or confidential. Another
- 3256 positive aspect of this approach is that the policy services can provide access control decisions
- consistently, and any change to access control policy can be changed in one place. 3257
- 3258 However, negative aspects of this model are those common with any type of centralized architecture, including performance and availability. Given performance, availability, and scalability concerns, any 3259
- centralized solution should be coupled with alternative approaches for greater flexibility. 3260

3261 5.2.5.2.2 Decentralized Access Control Approaches

- 3262 In a decentralized approach, the service consumer propagates a token related to its identity (and possibly other identities in a service chain), and this is assessed by a "local" PDP and PEP. The service PDP 3263 3264 refers to locally expressed policy, and therefore, its PDP can inspect the policy and the security 3265 credentials propagated in order to make an access control decision. If only identity information about the 3266 initiator is propagated into the service, the service may retrieve additional authorization credentials from an Attribute Service lookup based on the identity. 3267
- 3268 The decentralized model alleviates the performance concerns of the purely central model, as it does not 3269 require access to a set of centralized servers used to make access control decisions. Because the policy 3270 is locally expressed, the service may enforce its own policy, expressed in its service contract with service 3271 consumers.
- 3272 There are two potential concerns with this model. One concern is that there is no information hiding. If an 3273 assertion about the initiator is propagated into the service, the service may need security credentials of the consumer in order to execute access control policy, and these credentials may be sensitive or 3274 confidential. A second concern revolves around access control policy management. As this decentralized 3275 3276 model is based on making "local" (not centralized) access control decisions at the service level, there is a 3277 possibility that
 - Access control policies may not be consistently enforced throughout the SOA ecosystem
- 3278 Changing organizational access control policies require policy changes throughout the SOA 3279 ecosystem (vs. in a central location) and may be therefore difficult to immediately enforce. 3280
- 3281 Therefore, there is a danger that access control policies may be out-of-date and inconsistent. 3282 It is therefore prudent that in using such an approach, that these concerns be addressed.

3283 5.2.5.2.3 Hybrid Access Control Approaches

3284 A purely centralized approach has significant weaknesses related to performance, availability, and 3285 scalability; a purely decentralized approach does not support a requirement to have centralized control of

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 92 of 115

3286 access control policy. In response, hybrid approaches have emerged to provide a "happy medium" between local control of policy (where services express all policy) and central control of policy (where a 3287 central policy server expresses all policy). In hybrid models, each service can both express local policy 3288 and leverage global organizational policy (which can be periodically downloaded or syndicated to the 3289 local services) in order to make decisions. The balance between the models will depend on the context in 3290 3291 which the hybrid is applied.

5.2.6 Architectural Implications of SOA Security 3292

- 3293 Providing SOA security in an ecosystem of governed services has the following implications on the policy 3294 support and the distributed nature of mechanisms used to assure SOA security:
 - Security expressed through security messaging policies SHOULD follow the same architectural implications as described in Section 4.4.3 for policies and contracts architectural implications.
- Security policies **MUST** have mechanisms to support security description administration, storage. 3297 3298 and distribution.
- 3299 Service descriptions SHOULD include a sufficiently rich meta-structure to unambiguously indicate 3300 which security policies are required and where policy options are possible. 3301
 - The mechanisms that make-up the execution context in secure SOA-based systems SHOULD: provide protection of the confidentiality and integrity of message exchanges;
 - be distributed so as to provide available policy-based identification, authentication, and 0 authorization:
 - ensure service availability to consumers; 0
 - be able to scale to support security for a growing ecosystem of services; 0
 - be able to support security between different communication means or channels; 0
 - have a framework for resolving conflicts between security policies. 0
- 3309 Common security services SHOULD include the ability for:
 - authentication and establishing/validating credentials 0
 - retrieval of authorization credentials (attribute services); 0
- 3312 enforcing access control policies; 0
- intrusion detection and prevention; 3313 0 3314
 - auditing and logging interactions and security violations. \circ

5.3 Management Model 3315

5.3.1 Management 3316

3295

3296

3302

3303

3304

3305

3306

3307

3308

3310

3311

3323

3330

3331

3332

- 3317 Management is a process of controlling resources in accordance with the policies and principles defined 3318 by Governance.
- 3319 There are three separate but linked domains of interest within the management of a SOA ecosystem:
- 3320 1. the management and support of the resources that are involved in any complex structures - of 3321 which SOA ecosystems are excellent examples; 3322
 - the promulgation and enforcement of the policies and service contracts agreed to by the 2. stakeholders in the SOA ecosystem;
- 3324 3. the management of the relationships of the participants - both to each other and to the services 3325 that they use and offer.
- There are many artifacts related to management. Historically, systems management capabilities have 3326 3327 been organized by the FCAPS functions (based on ITU-T Rec. M.3400 (02/2000), TMN Management 3328 Functions): 3329
 - fault management, ٠
 - configuration management,
 - account management,
 - performance and security management.
- 3333 The primary task of the functional groups is to concentrate on maintaining systems in a trusted, active, and accessible state. 3334

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 93 of 115 In the context of the SOA ecosystem, we see many possible resources that may require management such as services, service descriptions, service contracts, policies, roles, relationships, security, people and systems that implement services and infrastructure elements. In addition, given the ecosystem nature, it is also potentially necessary to manage the business relationships between participants.

3339 Successful operation of a SOA ecosystem requires trust among the stakeholders and between them and 3340 the SOA-based system elements. In contrast, regular systems in technology are not necessarily operated or used in an environment requiring trust before the stakeholders make use of the system. Indeed, many 3341 3342 of these systems exist in hierarchical management structures, within which use may be mandated by legal requirement, executive decision, or good business practice in furthering the business' strategy. The 3343 pre-condition of trust in the SOA ecosystem is rooted both in the principles of service orientation and in 3344 the distributed, authoritative ownership of independent services. Even for hierarchical management 3345 3346 structures applied to a SOA ecosystem, the service in use should have a contractual basis rather than 3347 solely being mandated.

Trust may be established through agreements/contracts, policies, or implicitly through observation of repeated interactions with others. Explicit trust is usually accompanied by formalized documents suitable for management. Implicit trust adds fragility to the management of a SOA ecosystem because failure to maintain consistent and predictable interactions will undermine the trust between participants and within the ecosystem as a whole.

Management in a SOA ecosystem is thus concerned with management taking actions that will establish 3353 3354 the condition of trust that must be present before engaging in service interactions. These concerns should largely be handled within the governance of the ecosystem. The policies, agreements, and practices 3355 3356 defined through governance provide the boundaries within which management operates and for which 3357 management must provide enforcement and feedback. However, governance alone cannot foresee all 3358 circumstances but must offer sufficient guidance where agreement between all stakeholders cannot be 3359 reached. Management in these cases must be flexible and adaptable to handle unanticipated conditions 3360 without unnecessarily breaking trust relationships.

3361 Service management is the process - manual, automated, or a combination - of proactively monitoring 3362 and controlling the behavior of a service or a set of services. Service management operates under 3363 constraints attributed to the business and social context. Specific policies may be used to govern cross-3364 boundary relationships. Managing solutions based on such policies (and that may be used across ownership boundaries) raises issues that are not typically present when managing a service within a 3365 3366 single ownership domain. Care is therefore required in managing a service when the owner of the 3367 service, the provider of the service, the host of the service and mediators to the service may all belong to different stakeholders. 3368

- 3369 Cross-boundary service management takes place in, at least, the following situations:
 - using combinations of services that belong to different ownership domains
 - using of services that mediate between ownership domains
 - sharing monitoring and reporting means and results.

3373 These situations are particularly important in ecosystems that are highly decentralized, in which the 3374 participants interact as peers as well as in the 'master-servant' mode.

3375 The management model shown in *Figure 41* conveys how the SOA paradigm applies to managing

3376 services. Services management operates via service metadata, such as properties associated with

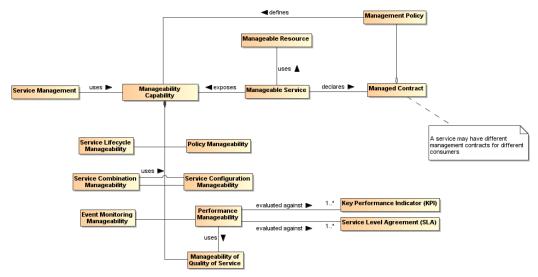
3377 service lifecycles and with service use, which are typically collected in or accessed through the service 3378 description.

3379

3370

3371

3372



3380 3381

Figure 41 - Management model in SOA ecosystem

The service metadata of interest is that set of service properties that is manageable. These manageability properties are generally identifiable for any service consumed or supplied within the ecosystem. The

3384 necessary existence of these properties within the SOA ecosystem motivates the following definitions:

3385 Manageability

3386A capability that allows a **resource** to be controlled, monitored, and reported on with respect to3387some properties.

3388 Manageability property

3389A property used in the manageability of a resource. The fundamental unit of management in3390systems management.

Note that manageability is not necessarily a part of the managed entities themselves and are generally
 considered to be external to the managed entities.

Each resource may be managed through a number of aspects of management, and the resources may be grouped based on similar aspects. For example, resources may be grouped according to the aspect referred to as 'Configuration Manageability' for the collection of services. Some resources may not be managed under a particular capability if there are no manageability aspects with a clear meaning or use. As an example, all resources within a SOA ecosystem have a lifecycle that is meaningful within the ecosystem. Thus, all resources are manageable under Lifecycle Manageability. In contrast, not all resources report or handle events. Thus, Event Manageability is only concerned with those resources for

3400 which events are meaningful.

3401 Life-cycle Manageability of a service typically refers to how the service is created, how it is retired and how service versions must be managed. This manageability is a feature of the SOA ecosystem because the service cannot manage its own life cycle. Related properties may include the necessary state of the ecosystem for the creation and retirement of the service and the state of the ecosystem following the retirement of the service. The SOA ecosystem distinguishes between service composition and service

aggregation: retiring of service composition leads to retiring of all services comprising the composition
 while retiring of service aggregation assumes that comprising services have their own life-cycle and can
 be used in another aggregation.

3409 Another important consideration is that services may have resource requirements, such as concurrent

3410 connectivity to a data source, which must be established at various points in the services' life cycles.

3411 However, actual providers of these resources may not be known at the time of the service creation and, 3412 thus, have to be managed at service run-time.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 95 of 115 3413 Combination Manageability of a service addresses management of service characteristics that allow for 3414 creating and changing combinations in which the service participates or that the service combines itself. 3415 Known models of such combinations are aggregations and compositions. Examples of patterns of combinations are choreography and orchestration. In cases of business collaboration, combination of 3416 services appears as cooperation of services. Combination Manageability drives implementation of the 3417 3418 Service Composability Principle of service orientation. 3419 Service combination manageability resonates with the methodology of process management. 3420 Combination Manageability may be applied at different phases of service creation and execution and, in 3421 some cases, can utilize Configuration Manageability. 3422 Service combinations typically contribute the most in delivering business values to the stakeholders. Managing service combinations is the one of the most important tasks and features of the SOA 3423 Comment [PFB45]: Issue #313 3424 ecosystem. - 31 3425 Configuration Manageability of a service allows managing the identity of and the interactions among 3426 internal elements of the service, for example, a use of data encryption for internal inter-component 3427 communication in particular deployment conditions. Also, Configuration Manageability correlates with the management of service versions and configuration of the deployment of new services into the ecosystem. 3428 Configuration Management differs from the Combination Manageability in the scope and scale of 3429 3430 manageability, and addresses lower level concerns than the architectural combination of services. 3431 Event Monitoring Manageability allows managing the categories of events of interest related to services and reporting recognized events to the interested stakeholders. Such events may be the ones that trigger 3432 3433 service invocations as well as execution of particular functionality provided by the service. For example, 3434 an execution of a set of financial market risk services, which implements a choreography pattern, may be **Comment** [PFB46]: Issue #313 3435 started if a certain financial event occurs in a stock exchange. - 32 3436 Event Monitoring Manageability is a key lower-level manageability aspect, in which the service provider Comment [PFB47]: Issue #313 3437 and associated stakeholders are interested. Monitored events may be internal or external to the SOA - 33 ecosystem. For example, a disaster in the oil industry, which is outside the SOA ecosystem of the Insurer, 3438 can trigger the service's functionality that is responsible for immediate or constant monitoring of oil prices 3439 3440 in the oil trading exchanges and, respectively, modify the premium paid by the insured oil companies. 3441 Performance Manageability of a service allows controlling the service results, shared and sharable real world effects against the business goals and objectives of the service. This manageability assumes 3442 3443 monitoring of the business performance as well as the management of this monitoring itself. Performance 3444 Manageability includes business and technical performance manageability through a performance criteria set, such as business key performance indicators (KPI) and service-level agreements (SLA). 3445 3446 The performance business- and technical-level characteristics of the service should be known from the 3447 service contract. The service provider and consumer must be able to monitor and measure these 3448 characteristics or be informed about the results measured by a third party. An example of such monitoring would be when the comparison of service performance results against an SLA is not satisfactory to the 3449 3450 consumer, and as a consequence, the consumer may replace the service by a service from a competitor. 3451 Performance Manageability is the instrument for providing compliance of the service with its service 3452 contracts. Performance Manageability utilizes Manageability of Quality of Service. 3453 Manageability of Quality of Service deals with management of service non-functional characteristics that may be of significant value to the service consumers and other stakeholders in the SOA ecosystem. 3454 3455 A classic example- of this is managing bandwidth offerings associated with a service. Comment [PFB48]: Issue #313 - 34 3456 Manageability of guality of service assumes that the properties associated with service gualities are 3457 monitored during the service execution. Results of monitoring may be compared against an SLA or a KPI, 3458 which results in the continuous validation of how the service contract is preserved by the service provider. 3459 Policy Manageability allows additions, changes and replacements of the policies associated with a 3460 resource in the SOA ecosystem. The ability to manage those policies (such as promulgating policies, 3461 retiring policies and ensuring that policy decision points and enforcement points are current) enables the 3462 ecosystem to apply policies and evaluate the results. 3463 The ability to manage, i.e. use a particular manageability, requires policies from governance to be 3464 translated into detailed rules and regulations which are measured and monitored providing corresponding 3465 feedback for enforcement. At the same time, the execution of a management capability must adhere to Edits to CSPRD03 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 02 November 2012 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. Page 96 of 115

certain policies governing the management itself. For example, a management has to enforce and control
 policies of compliance with particular industry regulation while the management is obliged by another
 policy to report on the compliance status periodically.

3469 Management of SOA ecosystem recognizes the manageability challenge and requires manageability

3470 properties to be considered for all aforementioned manageability cases. In the following subsections, we

3471 describe how these properties are used in the management as well as some relationships between

3472 management and other components of SOA ecosystem.

3473 **5.3.2 Management Means and Relationships**

A minimal set of management issues for the SOA ecosystem is shown in *Figure 42* and elaborated in the following sections.

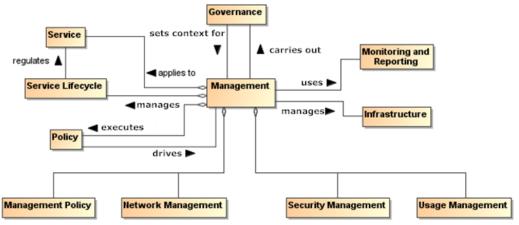




Figure 42 - Management Means and Relationships in a SOA ecosystem

3478 5.3.2.1 Management Policy

The management of resources within the SOA ecosystem may be governed by management policies. In
a deployed SOA-based solution, it may well be that different aspects of the management of a given
service are managed by different management services. For example, the life-cycle management of
services often involves managing service versions. Managing quality of service is often very specific to
the service itself; for example, quality of service attributes for a video streaming service are quite different

to those for a banking system.

3485 5.3.2.2 Network Management

Network management deals with the maintenance and administration of large scale physical networks
 such as computer networks and telecommunication networks. Specifics of the networks may affect
 service interactions from performance and operational perspectives.

3489 Network and related system management execute a set of functions required for controlling, planning, 3490 deploying, coordinating, and monitoring the distributed services in the SOA ecosystem. However, while 3491 recognizing their importance, the specifics of systems management or network management are out of 3492 scope for this Reference Architecture Foundation.

3493 5.3.2.3 Security Management

3494 Security Management includes identification of roles, permissions, access rights, and policy attributes 3495 defining security boundaries and events that may trigger a security response.

3496 Security management within a SOA ecosystem is essential to maintaining the trust relationships between 3497 participants residing in different ownership domains. Security management must consider not just the

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Edits to CSPRD03 02 N Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. F

02 November 2012 Page 97 of 115 internal properties related to interactions between participants but ecosystem properties that preserve the
 integrity of the ecosystem from external threats.

3500 5.3.2.4 Usage Management

3502 3503

3504 3505

3508

3501 Usage Management is concerned with how resources are used, including:

- how the resource is accessed, who is using the resource, and the state of the resource (access properties);
- controlling or shaping demand for resources to optimize the overall operation of the ecosystem (demand properties);
- assigning costs to the use of resources and distributing those cost assignments to the participants in an appropriate manner (financial properties).

3509 5.3.3 Management and Governance

The primary role of governance in the context of a SOA ecosystem is to foster an atmosphere of predictability, trust, and efficiency, and it accomplishes this by allowing the stakeholders to negotiate and set the key policies that govern the running of the SOA-based solution. Recall that in an ecosystem perspective, the goal of governance is less to have complete fine-grained control but more to enable the individual participants to work together.

3515 Policies for a SOA ecosystem will tend to focus on the rules of engagement between participants; for

3516 example, what kinds of interactions are permissible, how disputes are resolved, etc. While governance 3517 may primarily focus on setting policies. management will focus on the realization and enforcement of

3518 policies. Effective management in the SOA ecosystem requires an ability for governance to understand

3519 the consequences of its policies, guidelines, and principles, and to adjust those as needed when

inconsistencies or ambiguity become evident from the operation of the management functions. This
 understanding and adjustment must be facilitated by the results of management and so the mechanisms

3522 for providing feedback from management into governance must exist.

Governance operates via specialized activities and, thus, should be managed itself. Governance policies are included in the Governance Framework and Processes, and driven by the enterprise business model, business objectives and strategies. Where corporate management policies exist, these are usually guided and directed by the corporate executives. In peer relationships, governance policies are set by either an external entity and accepted by the peers or by the peers themselves. This creates the appropriate authoritative level for the policies used for the management of the Governance Framework and Processes. Management to operationalize governance controls the life-cycle of the governing policies,

including procedures and processes, for modifying the Governance Framework and Processes.

3531 5.3.4 Management and Contracts

3532 5.3.4.1 Management for Contracts and Policies

As we noted above, management can often be viewed as the application of contracts and individual policies to ensure the smooth running of the SOA ecosystem. Policies and service contracts specify the service characteristics that have to be monitored, analyzed and managed. These also play an important role as the guiding constraints for management, as well as being artifacts (e.g., policy and contractual documents) that also need to be managed.

3538 5.3.4.2 Contracts

3542

3543

3544

- 3539 As described in sections *Participation in a SOA Ecosystem* view and *Realization of a SOA*
- 3540 *Ecosystem* view, there are several types of contractual information in the SOA ecosystem. From the 3541 management perspective, three basic types of the contractual information relate to:
 - relationship between service provider and consumer;
 - communication with the service;
 - control of the quality of the service execution.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 98 of 115

3545	When a consumer prepares to interact with a service, the consumer and the service provider must come
3546	to an agreement on the service features and characteristics that will be provided by the service and made
3547	available to the consumer. This agreement is known as a service contract.

3548 Service Contract

3551

3554 3555

3549	An implicit or explicit documented agreement between the service consumer and service
3550	provider about the use of the service based on

- the commitment by a service provider to provide service functionality and results consistent 3552 with identified real world effects and 3553
 - the commitment by a service consumer to interact with the service per specific means and per specified policies.

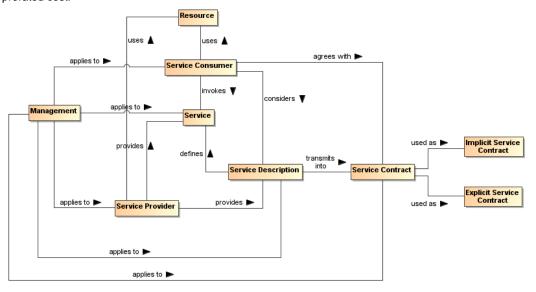
where both consumer and provider actions are in the manner described in the service description.

3556 The service description provides the basis for the service contract and, in some situations, may be used as an implicit default service contract. In addition, the service description may set mandatory aspects of a 3557 service contract, e.g. for security services, or may specify acceptable alternatives. As an example of 3558 3559 alternatives, the service description may identify which versions of a vocabulary will be recognized, and 3560 the specifics of the contract are satisfied when the consumer uses one of the alternatives. Another alternative could have a consumer identify a policy they require be satisfied, e.g. a standard privacy policy 3561 3562 on handling personal information, and a provider that is prepared to accept a policy request would indicate acceptance as part of the service contract by continuing with the interaction. In each of these 3563 3564 cases, the actions of the participants are consistent with an implicit service contract without the existence 3565 of a formal agreement between the participants.

3566 In the case of business services, it is anticipated that the service contract may take an explicit form and 3567 the agreement between business consumer and business service provider is formalized. Formalization 3568 requires up-front interactions between service consumer and service provider. In many business 3569 interactions, especially between business organizations within or across corporate boundaries, a

consumer must have a contractual assurance from the provider or wants to explicitly indicate choices 3570 3571 among alternatives, e.g., only use a subset of the business functionality offered by the service and pay a

3572 prorated cost.



3573 3574

Figure 43 - Management of the service interaction

3575 Consequently, an implicit service contract is an agreement (1) on the consumer side with the terms, 3576 conditions, features and interaction means specified in the service description "as is" or (2) a selection from alternatives that are made available through mechanisms included in the service description, and 3577 3578

neither of these require any a priori interactions between the service consumer and the service provider.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 99 of 115 Comment [PFB49]: Issue #313 - 35 (paragraph reformatted)

3579 For example, a browser interface may display a checked box indicating the consumer agrees to accept 3580 future advertisement; the consumer can uncheck the box to indicate advertisements should not be sent. 3581 An explicit service contract always requires a form of interaction between the service consumer and the 3582 service provider prior to the service invocation. This interaction may regard the choice or selection of the 3583 subset of the elements of the service description or other alternatives introduced through the formal 3584 agreement process that would be applicable to the interaction with the service and affect related joint 3585

3586 Any form of explicit contract couples the service consumer and provider. While explicit contracts may be 3587 necessary or desirable in some cases, such as in supply chain management, commerce often uses a mix of implicit and explicit contracts, and a service provider may offer (via service description) a conditional 3588 shift from implicit to explicit contract. For example, Twitter offers an implicit contract on the use of its APIs 3589 3590 to any application with the limit on the amount of service invocations: if the application has to use more 3591 invocations, one has to enter into the explicit fee-based contract with the provider. A case where an implicit contract transforms into an explicit contract may be illustrated when one buys a new computer and 3592 3593 it does not work. The buyer returns the computer for repair under the manufacturer's warranty as stated 3594 by an implicit purchase contract. However, if the repair does not fix the problem and the seller offers an 3595 upgraded model in replacement, the buyer may agree to an explicit contract that limits the rights of the 3596 buyer to make the explicit agreement public.

3597 Control of the quality of the service execution, often represented as a service level agreement (SLA), is 3598 performed by service monitoring systems and includes both technical and operational business controls. SLA is a part of the service contract and, because of the individual nature of such contracts, may vary 3599 3600 from one service contract to another, even for the same consumer. Typically, a particular SLA in the 3601 service contract is a concrete instance of the SLA declared in the service description.

3602 Management of the service contracts is based on management policies that may be mentioned in the service description and in the service contracts. Management of the service contracts is mandatory for 3603 3604 consumer relationship management. In the case of explicit service contracts, the contracts have to be 3605 created, stored, maintained, reviewed/controlled and archived/destroyed as needed. All the activities are management concerns. Explicit service contracts may be stored in specialized repositories that provide 3606 3607 appropriate levels of security.

3608 Management of the service interfaces is based on several management policies that regulate

availability of interfaces specified in the service contracts, •

3610 • accessibility of interfaces,

3609

3611

3612

action

- procedures for interface changes,
 - interface versions as well as the versions of all parts of the interfaces. •

3613 traceability of the interfaces and their versions back to the service description document. 3614 Management of the SLA is integral to the management of service monitoring and operational service 3615 behavior at run-time. An SLA usually enumerates service characteristics and expected performances of 3616 the service. Since an SLA carries the connotation of a 'promise', monitoring is needed to know if the promise is being kept. Existence of an SLA itself does not guarantee that the consumer will be provided 3617 with the service level specified in the service contract. 3618

3619 The use of an SLA in a SOA ecosystem can be wider than just an agreement on technical performances. 3620 An SLA may contain remedies for situations where the promised service cannot be maintained, or the 3621 real world effect cannot be achieved due to developments subsequent to the agreement. A service consumer that acts accordingly to realize the real world effect may be compensated for the breach of the 3622 3623 SLA if the effect is not realized.

3624 Management of the SLA includes, among others, policies to change, update, and replace the SLA. This 3625 aspect concerns service Execution Context because the business logic associated with a defined interface may differ in different Execution Contexts and affect the overall performance of the service. 3626

5.3.4.3 Policies 3627

3628 "Although provision of management capabilities enables a service to become manageable, the extent and 3629 degree of permissible management are defined in management policies that are associated with the services. Management policies are used to define the obligations for, and permissions to, managing the 3630

Edits to CSPRD03 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. Comment [PFB50]: Issue #313 - 36

02 November 2012

Page 100 of 115

service" [WSA]. Management policies, in essence, are the realization of governing rules and regulations.
 As such, some management policies may target services while other policies may target the management

3633 of the services.

3634 In practice, a policy without any means of enforcing it is vacuous. In the case of management policy, we 3635 rely on a management infrastructure to realize and enforce management policy.

3636 5.3.4.4 Service Description and Management

The service description identifies several management objects such as a set of service interfaces and related set of SLAs. Service behavioral characteristics and performances specified in the SLA depend on the interface type and its Execution Context. In the service description, a service consumer can find references to management policies, SLA metrics, and the means of accessing measured values that together increase assurance in the service quality. At the same time, service description is an artifact that must be managed.

3643 In the SOA ecosystem, the service description is the assembled information that describes the service but 3644 it may be reported or displayed in different presentations. While each separate version of the service has 3645 one and only one service description, different categories of service consumers may focus their interests 3646 on different aspects of the service description. Thus, the same service description may be displayed not 3647 only in different languages but also with different cultural and professional accents in the content.

3648 New service description may be issued to reflect changes and update in the service. If the change in the

3649 service does not affect its service description, the new service version may have the same service

3650 description as the previous version except for the updated version identifier. For example, a service 3651 description may stay the same if bugs were fixed in the service. However, if a change in the service

- 3652 influences any aspects of the service quality that can affect the real world effect resulting from
- interactions with the service, the service description must reflect this change even if there are no changes 3653 to the service interface.

3655 Management of the service description as well as of the explicit service contracts is essential for delivery 3656 of the service to the consumer satisfaction. This management can also prevent business problems rooted 3657 in poor communication between the service consumers and the service providers.

Thus, management of service description contains, among others, management of the service description presentations, the life-cycles of the service descriptions, service description distribution practices and storage of the service descriptions and related service contracts. Collections of service descriptions in the enterprise may manifest a need for specialized registries and/or repositories. Depending on the enterprise policies, an allocation of purposes and duties of registries and repositories may vary but this topic is

3663 beyond the current scope.

3664 5.3.5 Management for Monitoring and Reporting

The successful application of management relies on the monitoring and reporting aspects of management to enable the control aspect. Monitoring in the context of management consists of measuring values of managed aspects and evaluating that measurement in relationship to some expectation. Monitoring in a SOA ecosystem is enabled through the use of mechanisms by resources for exposing managed aspects. In the SOA framework, this mechanism may be a service for obtaining the measurement. Alternatively, the measurement may be monitored by means of event generation containing updated values of the managed aspect.

Approaches to monitoring may use a polling strategy in which the measurements are requested from

3673 resources in periodic intervals, in a pull strategy in which the measurements are requested from

resources at random times, or in a push strategy in which the measurements are supplied by the resource

- 3675 without request. The push strategy can be used in a periodic update approach or in an 'update on 3676 change' approach. Management services must be capable of handling these different approaches to
- 3677 monitoring.

3678 Reporting is the complement to monitoring. Where monitoring is responsible for obtaining measurements,

3679 reporting is responsible for distributing those measurements to interested stakeholders. The separation

between monitoring and reporting is made to include the possibility that data obtained through monitoring

3681 might not be used until an event impacting the ecosystem occurs or the measurement requires further

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 101 of 115

3682 3683 3684 3685 3686	processing to be useful. In the SOA framework, reporting is provided using services for requesting measurement reports. These reports may consist of raw measurement data, formatted collections of data, or the results of analysis performed on measurement data from collections of different managed aspects. Reporting is also used to support logging and auditing capabilities, where the reporting mechanisms create log or audit entries.				
3687	5.3.6 Management for Infrastructure				
3688 3689 3690 3691	All of the properties, policies, interactions, resources, and management are only possible if a SOA ecosystem infrastructure provides support for managed capabilities. Each managed capability imposes different requirements on the capabilities supplied by the infrastructure in <u>a SOA</u> ecosystem and requires that those capabilities be usable as services or at the very least be interoperable.		Comment - 37	[PFB51]:	Issue #313
3692	While not providing a full list of infrastructural elements of a SOA ecosystem, we list some examples here:				
3693 3694 3695 3696 3697 3698	 Registries and repositories for services, policies, and related descriptions and contracts Synchronous and asynchronous communication channels for service interactions (e.g., network, e-mail, message routing with ability of mediating transport protocols, etc.) Recovery capabilities Security controls A SOA ecosystem infrastructure, enabling service management, should also support: 				
3699 3700 3701 3702 3703 3704	 Management enforcement and control means Monitoring and SLA validation controls Testing and Reporting capabilities The combination of manageability properties, related capabilities and infrastructure elements constitutes a certain level of SOA management maturity. While several maturity models exist, this topic is out of the scope of the current document. 				
3705	5.3.7 Architectural Implication of the SOA Management		Comment - 38	[PFB52]:	Issue #313
3706 3707 3708	SOA Management is one of the fundamental elements of the SOA ecosystem; it impacts all aspects of a service life-cycle, service activities and actions, and a service usage. The key choices that must be made center on management means, methods and manageability properties:			[PFB53]:	Issue #313
3709 3710	 Every resource of the SOA ecosystem and, particularly, services MUST provide manageability properties 			[PFB54]:	Issue #313
3711 3712 3713	 The set of manageability properties SHOULD include as minimum such properties as life- cycle, combination, configuration, event monitoring, performance, quality of services, and policy manageability; 		- 39 Comment - 39	[PFB55]:	Issue #313
3714 3715	 Combinations of manageability properties MAY be used in different management methods and tools; 		- 40	[PFB56]:	
3716 3717	 Manageability properties and applicable policies SHOULD be appropriately described in the service service service. 		- 39	[PFB57]:	
3718 3719	 Management processes SHOULD operate (control, enforce and provide a feedback to the governance) via policies, agreements/contracts, and practices defined through governance; 		- 39	[PFB58]:	
3720 3721	 Management functions and information MAY be realized as services and, thus, MUST be managed itself; 		- 39		Issue #313
3722 3723	 Management in the cases, where sufficient guidance is unavailable or for which agreement between all stakeholders cannot be reached, MUST be flexible and adaptable to handle 		- 41		Issue #313
3724 3725	 unanticipated conditions without unnecessarily breaking trust relationships Management SHOULD engage a monitoring mechanism to enable manageability. Monitoring 		42		Issue #313
3726 3727	MUST include: O Access mechanisms to collected SLA metrics:		Comment - 39	[PFB62]:	Issue #313
3728 3729	 Assessment mechanisms to compare metrics against policies and contracts; Results of monitoring and reporting MUST be made accessible to participants in different 	\backslash	Comment - 39	[PFB63]:	Issue #313
3730	ownership domains.	$\langle \rangle$	Comment	[DEB64] ·	Jesuo #313

Comment [PFB64]: Issue #313 - 39

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 102 of 115

5.4 SOA Testing Model 3731

3732 Testing for SOA combines the typical challenges of software testing and certification with the addition of 3733 accommodating the distributed nature and independence of the resources, the greater access of a more 3734 unbounded consumer population, and the desired flexibility to create new solutions from existing 3735 components over which the solution developer has little if any control. The purpose of testing is to demonstrate a required level of reliability, correctness, and effectiveness that enable prospective 3736 3737 consumers to have adequate confidence in using a service. Adequacy is defined by the consumer based on the consumer's needs and context of use. Absolute correctness and completeness cannot be proven 3738 by testing; however, for SOA, it is critical for the prospective consumer to know what testing has been 3739 performed, how it has been performed, and what were the results. 3740

3741 5.4.1 Traditional Software Testing as Basis for SOA Testing

3742 SOA services are largely software artifacts and can leverage the body of experience that has evolved around software testing. [IEEE 829] specifies the basic set of software test documents while allowing 3743 3744 flexibility for tailored use. Many testing frameworks are available but the SOA-RAF does not prescribe the 3745 use of any one in particular and choice will be driven by a framework that offers the right amount and 3746 level of testing. As such, IEEE-829 can provide guidance to SOA testing and a point of reference for 3747 additional test concerns introduced by a SOA approach.

3748 IEEE-829 covers test specification and test reporting through use of several document types, including 3749 test plans; test design, test case, and test procedure specifications; and documents to identify, log, and 3750 report on test occurrences and artifacts. In summary, IEEE-829 captures (1) what was tested, (2) how it was tested, e.g. the test procedure used, and (3) the results of the test. While the SOA-RAF does not 3751 require IEEE-829 artifacts, those with responsibilities for testing should consider how aspects of IEEE-3752 3753 829 apply.

3754 5.4.1.1 Types of Testing

3755 There are numerous aspects of testing that, in total, work to establish that an entity is (1) built as required 3756 per policies and related specifications prescribed by the entity's owner, and (2) delivers the functionality required by its intended usersconsumers. This is often referred to as verification and validation. 3757

3758 In Section 4.4, Policies are described that can be related to testing. These policies may prescribe but are not limited to the business processes to be followed. Policies may also prescribe the standards with which 3759 3760 an implementation must comply, as well as the qualifications of and restrictions on the usersactors. In addition to the functional requirements prescribing what an entity does, there may also be non-functional 3761

3762 performance and/or quality metrics that state how well the entity performs. The relation of these policies to SOA testing is discussed further below. 3763

3764 The identification of policies is the purview of governance (section 5.1) and the assuring of compliance 3765 (including response to noncompliance) with policies is a matter for management (section 5.3).

5.4.1.2 Range of Test Conditions 3766

Test conditions and expected responses are detailed in the test case specification. The test conditions 3767 3768 should be designed to cover the areas for which the entity's response must be documented and may 3769 include:

nominal conditions;

3770

3771

3772

3773

3774 3775

- boundaries and extremes of expected conditions;
- breaking point where the entity has degraded below a certain level or has otherwise ceased effective functioning;
- random conditions to investigate unidentified dependencies among combinations of conditions errors conditions to test error handling

3776 The specification of how each of these conditions should be tested for SOA resources, including the infrastructure elements of the SOA ecosystem, is beyond the scope of this document but is an area that 3777 evolves along with operational SOA experience. 3778

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. Comment [PFB65]: Issue #312 -15 Comment [PFB66]: Issue #312 -16

Comment - 43	[PFB67]:	Issue #313
Comment -43	[PFB68]:	lssue #313
Comment - 43	[PFB69]:	lssue #313
Comment - 43	[PFB70]:	Issue #313

02 November 2012

Page 103 of 115

3779 5.4.2 Testing and the SOA Ecosystem

Testing of SOA artifacts for use in the SOA ecosystem differs from traditional software testing for several
 reasons. These include a difference in what constitutes the consumer community and what constitutes
 the evolving environment that comprises the SOA ecosystem. In response, testing must include
 considerations for making a service testable throughout its lifetime.

3784 5.4.2.1 Testing and the Consumer Communities

A highly touted benefit of SOA is to enable unanticipated consumers to make use of services for unanticipated purposes. Examples of this could include the consumer using a service for a result that was not considered the primary one by the provider or the service may be used in combination with other services in a scenario that is different from the one considered when designing for the initial target consumer community. It is unlikely that a new consumer will push the services back to anything resembling the initial test phase to test the new use, and thus additional paradigms for testing are necessary. The potential responsibilities related to such "consumer testing" are discussed further below.

3792 In addition to consumers who interact with a service to realize the described real world effects, the

- 3793 developer community is also intended to be a consumer. In the SOA vision of reuse, the developer
- 3794 composes new solutions using existing services, where the existing services provide desired real world
- effects that are needed by the new solution. The composed solution must be tested for its intended
- functionality, and the component service may need particular attention if its use is different from its typical use as a separate offering. Note, the composition developer is not expected to own a private copy of a
- 3798 component service, and testing may be dependent on test interfaces provided by the component service.

3799 5.4.2.2 Testing and the Evolving SOA Ecosystem

The distributed, unbounded nature of the SOA ecosystem makes it unlikely to have an isolated test environment that duplicates the operational environment. A traditional testing approach often makes use of a test system that is identical to the eventual operational system but isolated for testing. After testing is successfully completed, the tested entity would be migrated to the operational environment, or the test environment may be delivered as part of the system to become operational. This is not feasible for the SOA ecosystem as a whole.

3806 SOA services must be testable in the environment and under the conditions that can be encountered in 3807 the operational SOA ecosystem. As the ecosystem is in constant change, so some level of testing is

- 3808 continuous through the lifetime of the service, leveraging utility services used by the ecosystem
- 3809 infrastructure to monitor its own health and respond to situations that could lead to degraded
- 3810 performance. This implies the test resources must incorporate aspects of the SOA paradigm, and a
- 3811 category of services may be created to specifically support and enable effective monitoring and
- 3812 continuous testing for resources participating in the SOA ecosystem.
- 3813 While SOA within an enterprise may represent a more constrained and predictable operational
- 3814 environment, the composability and unanticipated use aspects are highly touted within the enterprise.
- 3815 The expanded perspective on testing may not be as demanding within an enterprise but fuller
- 3816 consideration of the ecosystem enables the enterprise to be more responsive should conditions change.

3817 5.4.3 Elements of SOA Testing

3818 IEEE-829 emphasizes identifying what is to be tested, how it is to be tested, and by whom the testing is to 3819 be done. This is equally applicable to SOA testing.

3820 5.4.3.1 What is to be Tested

3821 The focus of this discussion is the SOA service. It is recognized that the infrastructure components of

- any SOA environment are likely to also be SOA services and, as such, falls under the same testing guidance. Other resources that contribute to a SOA environment may not be SOA services, but are
- 3824 expected to satisfy the intent if not the letter of guidance presented here.
- The following discussion often focuses on a singular SOA service but it is implicit that any service may be a composite of other services. As such, testing the functionality of a composite service may effectively be

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03	02 November 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.	Page 104 of 115

3828 are available for the component services, appropriate end-to-end testing of the composite may be 3829 required in order to verify that the composite functionality is still adequately provided. The level of required testing of an updated composite service depends on policies of those providing the service. 3830 3831 policies of those using the service, and mission criticality of those depending on the service results. 3832 The Service Description model (Figure 16) elaborates on described aspects of a service: 3833 the service functionality and technical assumptions that underlie the functionality; 3834 the policies that describe conditions of use; 3835 the service interface that defines information exchange with the service; • service reachability that identifies how and where message exchange is to occur; and 3836 • metrics access for any participant to have information on how a service is performing. 3837 3838 The aspects represent joint concerns of all the stakeholders, and service testing must provide adequate 3839 assurance that each of these aspects is operational as defined. In particular: 3840 Service functionality is an early and ongoing focus of testing to ensure the service accurately 3841 reflects the described functionality and the described functionality accurately addresses the 3842 consumer needs. 3843 Policies constraining service development, such as coding standards and best practices, require 3844 appropriate testing and auditing during development to ensure compliance. Policies that define conditions of use are initially tested during service development and are continuously monitored 3845 3846 during the operational lifetime of the service. 3847 At any point where the interface is modified or exposes a new resource, the message exchange 3848 should be monitored both to ensure the message reaches its intended destination and it is parsed 3849 correctly once received. 3850 The service interface is also tested when the service endpoint changes. Functioning of a service endpoint at one time does not guarantee it is functioning at another time, e.g. the server with the 3851 3852 endpoint address may be down, making testing of service reachability a continual monitoring 3853 function through the life of the service's use of the endpoint. Metrics are a key indicator for consumers to decide if a service is adequate for their needs. For 3854 instance, the average response time or the recent availability can be determining factors even if 3855 3856 there are no rules or regulations promulgated through the governance process against which 3857 these metrics are assessed. Testing will ensure that the metrics access indicated in the service 3858 description is accurate.

testing an end-to-end business process that is being provided by the composite service. If new versions

3859 The individual test requirements highlight aspects of the service that testing must consider but testing must establish more than isolated behavior. The emphasis is the holistic results of interacting with the 3860 3861 service in the SOA environment. Recall that the execution context is the set of agreements between a 3862 consumer and a provider that define the conditions under which service interaction occurs. Variations in 3863 the execution context require monitoring to ensure that different combinations of conditions perform 3864 together as desired. For example, if a new privacy policy takes additional resources to apply, this may 3865 affect quality of service and propagate other effects. These could not be tested during the original testing 3866 if the alternate policy did not exist at that time.

3867 5.4.3.2 How Testing is to be Done

3827

3868Testing should follow well-defined methodologies and, if possible, should reuse test artifacts that have3869proven generally useful for past testing. For example, IEEE-829 notes that test cases are separated from3870test designs to allow for use in more than one design and to allow for reuse in other situations. As with3871description of a service in the SOA ecosystem, description of testing artifacts enables awareness of the3872artifact and describes how the artifact may be accessed or used.

As with traditional testing, the specific test procedures and test case inputs are important so the tests are unambiguously defined and entities can be retested in the future. Automated testing and regression testing may be more important in the SOA ecosystem in order to re-verify a service is still acceptable when incorporated in a new use. For example, if a new use requires the services to deal with input parameters outside the range of initial testing, the tests could be rerun with the new parameters. If the testing resources (e.g. services that support re-executing test cases) are available to consumers within the SOA ecosystem, the testing as designed by test professionals could be consumed through a service

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 105 of 115 accessed by consumers, and their results could augment those already in place. This is discussedfurther in the next section.

3882 5.4.3.3 Who Performs the Testing

As with any software, the first line of testing is unit testing done by software developers. It is likely that
 initial testing will be done by those developing the software but may also be done independently by other
 developers. For SOA development, unit testing is likely confined to a development sandbox isolated from
 the SOA ecosystem.

SOA testing will differ from traditional software testing in that testing beyond the development sandbox must incorporate aspects of the SOA ecosystem, and those doing the testing must be familiar with both the characteristics and responses of the ecosystem and the tools, especially those available as services, to facilitate and standardize testing. Test professionals will know what level of assurance must be established as the exposure of the service to the ecosystem and ecosystem to the service increases towards operational status. These test professionals may be internal resources to an organization or may evolve as a separate discipline provided through external contracting.

As noted above, it is unlikely that a complete duplicate of the SOA ecosystem will be available for isolated testing, and thus use of ecosystem resources will manifest as a transition process rather than a step change from a test environment to an operational one. This is especially true for new composite services that incorporate existing operational services to achieve the new functionality. The test professionals will

3898 need to understand the available resources and the ramifications of this transition.

As with current software development, a stage beyond work by test professionals will make use of a select group of typical users (commonly referred to as beta testers) to report on service

response during typical intended use. This establishes fitness by the consumers, providing final
 validation of previously verified processes, requirements, and final implementation.

3903 In traditional software development, beta testing is the end of testing for a given version of the software. 3904 However, although the initial test phase can establish an appropriate level of confidence consistent with 3905 the designed use for the initial target consumer community, the operational service will exist in an 3906 evolving ecosystem, and later conditions of use may differ from those thought to be sufficient during the 3907 initial testing. Thus, operational monitoring becomes an extension of testing through the service lifetime. This continuous testing will attempt to ensure that a service does not consume an inordinate amount of 3908 3909 ecosystem resources or display other behavior that degrades the ecosystem, but it will not undercover 3910 functional errors that may surface over time.

As with any software, it is the responsibility of the consumers to consider the reasonableness of solutions 3911 3912 in order to spot errors in either the software or the way the software is being used. This is especially important for consumers with unanticipated uses that may go beyond the original test conditions. It is 3913 unlikely the consumers will initiate a new round of formal testing unless the new use requires a 3914 3915 significantly higher level of confidence in the service. Rather the consumer becomes a new extension to 3916 the testing regiment. Obvious testing would include a sanity check of results during the new use. However, if the details of legacy testing are associated with the service through the service description 3917 3918 and if testing resources are available through automated testing services, then the new consumers can 3919 rerun and extend previous testing to include the extended test conditions. If the test results are acceptable, these can be added to the documentation of previous results and become the extended basis 3920 3921 for future decisions by prospective consumers on the appropriateness of the service. If the results are not 3922 acceptable or in some way questionable, the responsible party for the service or testing professionals can

3923 be brought in to decide if remedial action is necessary.

3924 5.4.3.4 How Testing Results are Reported

For any SOA service, an accurate reporting of the testing a service has undergone and the results of the testing is vital to consumers deciding whether a service is appropriate for intended use. Appropriateness may be defined by a consumer organization and require specific test regiments culminating in a certification; appropriateness could be established by accepting testing and certifications that have been conferred by others.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 106 of 115 Comment [PFB71]: Issue #312 - 17

The testing and certification information should be identified in the service description. Referring to the general description model of *Figure 14*, tests conducted by or under a request from the service owner (see ownership in section 3.2.4) would be captured under Annotations from Owners. Testing done by others (such as consumers with unanticipated uses) could be associated through Annotations from 3rd Parties.

Consumer testing and the reporting of results raise additional issues. While stating who did the testing is mandatory, there may be formal requirements for authentication of the tester to ensure traceability of the testing claims. In some circumstances, persons or organizations would not be allowed to state testing claims unless the tester was an approved entity. In other cases, ensuring the tester had a valid email may be sufficient. In either case, it would be at the discretion of the potential consumer to decide what level of authentication was acceptable and which testers are considered authoritative in the context of their anticipated use.

3941 Finally, in a world of openly shared information, we would see an ever-expanding set of testing

information as new uses and new consumers interact with a service. In reality, these new uses may

3943 represent proprietary processes or classified use that should only be available to authorized parties.

3944 Testing information, as with other elements of description, may require special access controls to ensure

3945 appropriate access and use.

3946 5.4.4 Testing SOA Services

Testing of SOA services should be consistent with the SOA paradigm. In particular, testing resources and artifacts should be visible in support of service interaction between providers and consumers, where here the interaction is between the testing resource and the tester. In addition, the idea of opacity of the implementation should limit the details that need to be available for effective use of the test resources.

3951 Software testing is a gradual exercise going from micro inspection to testing macro effects. A typical

testing process is likely to begin with the traditional code reviews. SOA considerations would account for the distributed nature of SOA, including issues of distributed security and best practices to ensure secure resources.

3955 Code review is likely followed by unit testing in a development sandbox isolated from the operational 3956 environment. The unit testing is done with full knowledge of the service internal structure and knowledge 3957 of resources representing underlying capabilities. Some aspects of testing may require external dependencies be satisfied, and this is often done using substitutes that mimic some aspects of the 3958 3959 performance of an operational service without committing to the real world effects that the operational service would produce. Unit testing includes tests of the service interface to ensure exchanged messages 3960 3961 are as specified in the service description and the messages can be parsed and interpreted as intended. 3962 Unit testing also verifies intended functionality and that the software has dealt correctly with internal 3963 dependencies, such as access to other dedicated resources.

3964 After unit testing has demonstrated an adequate level of confidence in the service, the testing must 3965 transition from the tightly controlled environment of the development sandbox to an environment that 3966 more closely resembles the operational SOA ecosystem or, at a minimum, the intended enterprise. While sandbox testing will substitute for some interactions with the SOA environment, such as an interface to a 3967 3968 security service without the security service functionality, the dynamic nature of SOA makes a full 3969 simulation infeasible to create or maintain. This is especially true when a new composite service makes 3970 use of operational services provided by others. Thus, at some point before testing is complete, the 3971 service will need to demonstrate its functionality by using resources and dealing with conditions that only 3972 exist in the full ecosystem or the intended enterprise. Some of these resources may still provide test 3973 interfaces but the interfaces will be accessible using the SOA environment and not just implemented for 3974 the sandbox.

3975 At this stage, the opacity of the service becomes important as the details of interacting with the service 3976 now rely on correct use of the service interface and not knowledge of the service internals. The workings of the service will only be observable through the real world effects realized through service interactions 3977 3978 and external indications that conditions of use, such as user authentication, are satisfied. Monitoring the 3979 behavior of the service will depend on service interfaces that expose internal monitoring or provide 3980 required information to the SOA infrastructure monitoring function. The monitoring required to test a new service is likely to have significant overlap with the monitoring the SOA infrastructure includes to monitor 3981 3982 its own health and to identify and isolate behavior outside of acceptable bounds. This is exactly what is

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 107 of 115 3983 needed as part of service testing, and it is reasonable to assume that the ecosystem transition includes use of operational monitoring rather than solely dedicated monitoring for each service being tested. Use 3984 3985 of SOA monitoring resources during the explicit testing phase sets the stage for monitoring and a level of 3986 continual testing throughout the service lifetime.

3987 In summary, consider the example of a new composite service that combines the real world effects and 3988 complies with the conditions of use of five existing operational services. The developer of the composite service does not own any of the component services and has limited, if any, ability to get the distributed 3989 3990 owners to do any customization. The developer also is limited by the principle of opacity to information 3991 comprising the service description, and does not know internal details of the component services. The developer of the composite service must use the component services as they exist as part of the SOA 3992

3993 environment, including what is provided to support testing by new users.

5.4.5 Architectural Implications for SOA Testing 3994

The discussion of SOA Testing indicates numerous architectural implications that **MUST** be considered 3995 for testing of resources and interactions within the SOA ecosystem: 3996

- 3997 SOA services **MUST** be testable in the environment and under the conditions that can be 3998 encountered in the operational SOA ecosystem.
- The distributed, boundary-less nature of the SOA ecosystem makes it infeasible to create and 3999 4000 maintain a single testing substitute of the entire ecosystem to support testing activities. Test protocols **MUST** recognize and accommodate for changes to and activities within the ecosystem. 4001
- 4002 A standard suite of monitoring services **SHOULD** be defined, developed, and maintained. This 4003 SHOULD be done in a manner consistent with the evolving nature of the ecosystem. 4004
 - Services SHOULD provide interfaces that support access in a test mode.
 - Testing resources MUST be described and their descriptions MUST be catalogued in a manner that enables their discovery and access.
 - Guidelines for testing and ecosystem access **MUST** be established and the ecosystem **MUST** be able to enforce those guidelines asserted as policies.
- Services SHOULD be available to support automated testing and regression testing. 4009
- Services SHOULD be available to facilitate updating service description by authorized 4010
- participants who has performed testing of a service. 4011

Comment [PFB72]: Issue #312 -19

4005 4006

4007 4008

4012 6 Conformance

4013 6.1 Conformance Targets

4014 This Reference Architecture Foundation is an abstract architectural description of Service Oriented

- 4015 Architecture. As such, tests of conformance to the RAF should be concerned primarily with adherence to 4016 principles rather than technical details such as prescribed syntax or coding conventions. Relevant
- 4017 principles are set out in the RAF through
- 4018 the modeling of concepts and relationships (defining what it means to realize, own, and use SOA 4019 based systems and have such systems participate in a SOA ecosystem); and
- 4020 a series of Architectural Implications.
- The discussion of concepts and relationships that elaborate the SOA principles in each of the main
 sections above culminates in an 'Architectural Implications' section (sections 3.4, 4.1.4, 4.2.3, 4.3.6,
 4.4.3, 5.1.4, 5.2.5, 5.3.7, and 5.4.5), where these sections contain formal conformance requirements
- 4.4.3, 5.1.4, 5.2.5, 5.3.7, and 5.4.5), where these sections contain formal conformance requirement
 4024 ("MAY", "MUST", "SHOULD") in accordance with [RFC 2119].
- In discussing conformance, we use the term SOA-RAF Target Architecture to identify the (typically
 concrete) architecture that may be considered as conforming to the abstract principles outlined in this
 document.

4028 SOA-RAF Target Architecture

- 4029An architectural description of a system that is intended to be viewed as conforming to the4030SOA-RAF
- 4031 While we cannot guarantee interoperability between target architectures (or more specifically between
- 4032 applications and systems residing within the ecosystems of those target architectures), the likelihood of 4033 interoperability between target architectures is increased by conformance to this Reference Architecture
- 4034 Framework as it facilitates semantic engagement between the different ecosystems.

4035 6.2 Conformance and Architectural Implications

- 4036 The SOA-RAF focuses on concepts, and the relationships between them, that are needed to enable 4037 SOA-based systems to be realized, owned, and used. The Architectural Implications reflect specific
- 4038 elements that will be reflected in a more concrete architecture based on the SOA-RAF.
- 4039 Conformance can therefore be measured both in terms of how a SOA-RAF Target Architecture uses the
 4040 concepts and models outlined in the SOA-RAF; and how the various Architectural Implications have been
 4041 addressed.

4042 6.3 Conformance Summary

- 4043 Concepts described in the RAF **SHOULD** be expressed and used in the target architecture. If used, such 4044 expression **MUST** reflect the relationships identified within this document.
- Terminology within the target architecture **SHOULD** be identical to that in the RAF and the terms used refer to the same concepts; and any graph of concepts and relationships between them that *are* used **MUST** be consistent with the RAF.
- 4048 The SOA-RAF Target Architecture **MUST** take account of the Architectural Implications in the sections 4049 listed above.

Appendix A. Acknowledgements 4050

4051 The following individuals have participated in the work of the technical committee responsible for creation

4052 of this specification and are gratefully acknowledged:

4053 Participants:

- 4054 Chris Bashioum, MITRE Corporation 4055 Rex Brooks, Individual Member 4056 Peter F Brown, Individual Member 4057 Scott Came, Search Group Inc. 4058 Joseph Chiusano, Booz Allen Hamilton 4059 Robert Ellinger, Northrop Grumman Corporation David Ellis, Sandia National Laboratories 4060 Jeff A. Estefan, Jet Propulsion Laboratory 4061 Don Flinn, Individual Member 4062 4063 Anil John, Johns Hopkins University Ken Laskey, MITRE Corporation 4064 Boris Lublinsky, Nokia Corporation 4065 4066 Francis G. McCabe, Individual Member 4067 Christopher McDaniels, USSTRATCOM 4068 Tom Merkle, Lockheed Martin Corporation 4069 Jyoti Namjoshi, Patni Computer Systems Ltd. Duane Nickull, Adobe Inc. 4070 4071 James Odell, Associate 4072 Michael Poulin, Fidelity Investments Kevin Smith, Individual Member 4073 4074 Michael Stiefel, Associate 4075 Danny Thornton, Northrop Grumman 4076 Timothy Vibbert, Lockheed Martin Corporation Robert Vitello, New York Dept. of Labor 4077 4078 The committee would particularly like to underline the significant writing and conceptualization
- contributions made by Chris Bashioum, Rex Brooks, Peter Brown, Dave Ellis, Jeff Estefan, Ken Laskey, 4079
- 4080 Boris Lublinsky, Frank McCabe, Michael Poulin, Kevin Smith and Danny Thornton

4081

4082 Appendix B. Index of Defined Terms

Action
Action Level Real World Effect51
Actor
Authority
Business functionality 30
Business solution
Capability31
Communication
Composability
Constitution
Consumer
Contract
Delegate
Endpoint65
Governance
Governance Framework
Governance Processes
Identifier
Joint Action
Leadership
Logical Framework76
Manageability 100
Manageability property 100
Mediator
Message Exchange 68
Need
Non-Participant
Obligation
Operations
Owner
Ownership
Ownership Boundary
Participant
Permission
Policy

_			
Policy Cor	nflict77	7	
Policy Conflict Resolution77			
Policy Cor	nstraint76	3	
Policy Decision7			
Policy Enf	orcement77	7	
Policy Fra	mework75	5	
Policy Obj	ject76	3	
Policy On	tology76	3	
Policy Ow	ner76	3	
Policy Sub	oject76	3	
Presence	65	5	
Private St	ate41	I	
Protocol	65	5	
Provider		9	
Real Worl	d Effect31	I	
Regulation	n83	3	
Requirem	ent31	I	
Resource		2	
Responsit	oility28	3	
Right		3	
Risk		1	
Rule	83	3	
Security	90)	
Semantic	Engagement37	7	
Service C	ontract104	1	
Service Le	evel Real World Effect51	I	
Shared St	ate41	I	
SOA Ecos	system22	2	
SOA-base	ed System22	2	
Social Str	ucture24	1	
Stakehold	er26	3	
State41			
Trust		1	
Willingnes	ss34	1	

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product

Appendix C. Relationship to other SOA Open Standards

Numerous efforts have been working in the space of defining standards for SOA and its applications. The
 OASIS SOA-RM Technical Committee and its SOA-RA Sub-Committee has established communications
 with several of these efforts in an attempt to coordinate and facilitate among the efforts. This appendix
 notes some of these efforts.

4089 C.1 Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around 4090 Architecture

The white paper *Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture* issued jointly by
OASIS, OMG, and The Open Group **[SOA NAV]** was written to help the SOA community at large
navigate the myriad of overlapping technical products produced by these organizations with specific
emphasis on the 'A' in SOA, i.e., Architecture.

4095The white paper explains and positions standards for SOA reference models, ontologies, reference4096architectures, maturity models, modeling languages, and standards work on SOA governance. It outlines4097where the works are similar, highlights the strengths of each body of work, and touches on how the work4098can be used together in complementary ways. It is also meant as a guide to users implementers for4099selecting those specifications most appropriate for their needs.

4100 While the understanding of SOA and SOA Governance concepts provided by these works is similar, the 4101 evolving standards are written from different perspectives. Each specification supports a similar range of 4102 opportunity, but has provided different depths of detail for the perspectives on which they focus. Although 4103 the definitions and expressions may differ, there is agreement on the fundamental concepts of SOA and 4104 SOA Governance.

4105 The following is a summary taken from **[SOA NAV]** of the positioning and guidance on the specifications:

- The OASIS Reference Model for SOA (SOA RM) is, by design, the most abstract of the specifications positioned. It is used for understanding core SOA concepts
- The Open Group SOA Ontology extends, refines, and formalizes some of the core concepts of the SOA RM. It is used for understanding core SOA concepts and facilitates a model-driven approach to SOA development.
- The OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for SOA (this document) is an abstract,
 foundational reference architecture addressing a broader ecosystem viewpoint for building and
 interacting within the SOA paradigm. It is used for understanding different elements of SOA, the
 completeness of SOA architectures and implementations, and considerations for reaching across
 ownership boundaries where there is no single authoritative entity for SOA and SOA governance.
- The Open Group SOA Reference Architecture is a layered architecture from consumer and provider perspective with cross cutting concerns describing these architectural building blocks and principles that support the realizations of SOA. It is used for understanding the different elements of SOA, deployment of SOA in enterprise, basis for an industry or organizational reference architecture, implication of architectural decisions, and positioning of vendor products in a SOA context.
- The Open Group SOA Governance Framework is a governance domain reference model and method. It is for understanding SOA governance in organizations. The OASIS Reference Architecture for SOA Foundation contains an abstract discussion of governance principles as applied to SOA across boundaries
- The Open Group SOA Integration Maturity Model (OSIMM) is a means to assess an organization's maturity within a broad SOA spectrum and define a roadmap for incremental adoption. It is used for understanding the level of SOA maturity in an organization
- The Object Management Group SoaML Specification supports services modeling UML
 extensions. It can be seen as an instantiation of a subset of the Open Group RA used for
 representing SOA artifacts in UML.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1	Edits to CSPRD03
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

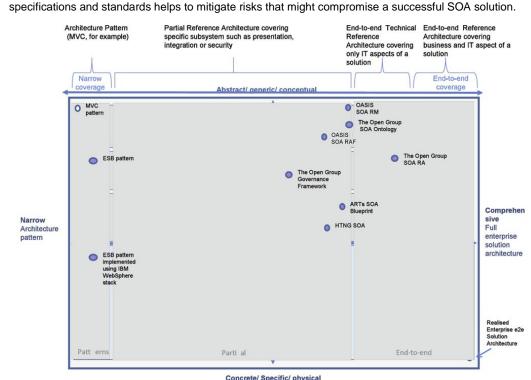
4106 4107

> 02 November 2012 Page 112 of 115

Comment [PFB73]: Issue #312 - 20

4132 Fortunately, there is a great deal of agreement on the foundational core concepts across the many

- 4133 independent specifications and standards for SOA. This can be best explained by broad and common
- 4134 experience of users implementers of SOA and its maturity in the marketplace. It also provides assurance
- 4135 that investing in SOA-based business and IT transformation initiatives that incorporate and use these 4136 specifications and standards helps to mitigate risks that might compromise a successful SOA solution



4137 4138 4139 Concrete/ Specific/ physical

Figure 44 - SOA Reference Architecture Positioning (from 'Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture', © OASIS, OMG, The Open Group)

4140 C.2 The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: Canonical

Readers of the RAF are strongly encouraged to review a document recently published by the Health 4141 4142 Level Seven (HL7) Architecture Board (ArB) entitled The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: 4143 Canonical. The document was developed over the past four years, and represents a substantive, 4144 industry-specific effort (i.e. the large but vertical healthcare industry) to surface, define, and discuss in 4145 detail various aspects of a number of critical success factors involved in implementing large-scale (i.e. 4146 enterprises-level) architectures with a focus on achieving both intra- and inter-enterprise technical 4147 interoperability irrespective of the particular exchange mechanism involved, e.g. service interface, 4148 messages, or structure documents.

In addition to providing an independent validation for the both the general focus as well as some of the
 specifics of the RAF (especially those involving the importance of governance in achieving large-scale
 interoperability), the HL7 document underscores several important aspects of the RAF including:

 A validation of one of the RAF's primary claims, i.e. the need to specifically focus on intra- and interenterprise interoperability as a first-class citizen in any enterprise (or cross-enterprise) architecture discussion irrespective of the particular choice of enterprise architecture approach, framework, or implementation technology, e.g. TOGAF, Zachman, ODP, SOA, etc. In addition, the HL7 document clearly articulates – as the RAF does as well – the difficulties involved in achieving that focus in such

 soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1
 Edits to CSPRD03

 Standards Track Work Product
 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved.

02 November 2012 Page 113 of 115 **Comment [PFB74]:** Issue #312 - 21

4157 a manner that it can be manifest in operationally effective and manageable processes and4158 deliverables.

- 4159
 4160
 4160
 4160
 4160
 4161
 4161
 4162
 4162
 4162
 4163
 4163
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164
 4164</l
- 4165 3. A validation of the importance of core SOA constructs as constructs useful in expressing many of the central aspects of interoperability irrespective of whether a particular interoperability scenario is 4166 actually 'realized' using SOA-compatible technologies. (NOTE: Although it might at first appear that 4167 4168 the OASIS document is more 'service-focused' than the 'service-aware' document from HL7, there 4169 are considerably more similarities than differences in these slightly different foci secondary to the fact that both documents are intent on describing principles and framework concepts rather than delving 4170 4171 into technical details. There are, however, certain instances where content of the OASIS document would be likely to find its analogue in SAIF Implementation Guides rather than in the SAIF Canonical 4172 4173 Definition document.)
- 4. The need for specific, explicit statements of those aspects of a given component that affects its ability to participate in a reliable, predictable manner in a variety of interoperability scenarios. In particular, component characteristics must be explicitly expressed in both design-time and run-time contexts as implicit assumptions are the root of most failures to achieve successfully cross-boundary interoperability irrespective of the chosen technical details of a particular interoperability instance.
- 4179 In summary, although the two documents are clearly not identical in their specifics, e.g. there are 4180 differences in the language used to name various concepts, constructs, and relationships; there are some differences in levels of abstraction regarding certain topics, etc.; and although the OASIS RAF is more 4181 4182 directly focused on services as a final implementation architecture than the HL7 SAIF CD, the 4183 commonalities of purpose, content, and approach present in the two documents - documents which were developed by each organization without any knowledge of the others' work in what clearly are areas of 4184 4185 common interest and concern - far outweighs their differences. As such, the HL7 ArB and the OASIS 4186 RAF Task Force have agreed to work together going forward to obtain the highest degree of alignment and harmonization possible between the two documents including the possible development of a joint 4187 4188 document under the auspices of one of the ISO software engineering threads.
- 4189 The current version of the HL7 document as well as all future versions is available at:
- 4190 http://www.hl7.org/permalink/?SAIFCDR1PUBLIC

4191 C.3 IEEE Reference Architecture

4192 As the RAF has been finalized, a new initiative has appeared from the Institute of Electrical and

- 4193 Electronics Engineers (IEEE) to develop a SOA Reference Architecture. Encouragingly, the working
- 4194 group established decided not to start from scratch but instead take account of existing work. Its initial
- 4195 phase of work is currently ongoing (Summer 2012) and is concentrating on assessing both the current
- 4196 RAF and The Open Group's SOA Reference Architecture. The desire at this stage is to endorse these 4197 two works rather than to create a new one.

4198 **C.4 RM-ODP**

The Reference Model for Open Distributed Processing (the RM-ODP) is an international standard
 developed by the ISO and ITU-T standardization organizations [ISO/IEC 10746]. It provides a set of
 concepts and structuring rules for describing and building open distributed systems, structured in terms of
 five viewpoints, representing concerns of different stakeholders.

- 4203 From an architectural point of view, there is no significant difference between service-oriented 4204 architectures (SOA) and the architectural framework defined in ODP. Some argue that current service-
- 4205 oriented approaches can be understood as a subset of the more general ODP approach [LININGTON].
 4206 Many of the concepts and principles in the RAF and the RM-ODP are indeed closely aligned.

soa-ra-v1.0-csprd03-rev1 Standards Track Work Product Edits to CSPRD03 Copyright © OASIS Open 2012. All Rights Reserved. 02 November 2012 Page 114 of 115 4207 In common with the RAF, RM-ODP uses the Viewpoint construct of **[ISO/IEC 42010]** in order to articulate 4208 the work, context and concepts.

4209 There is a danger of over-simplifying the comparison and losing some of the important mapping between 4210 the concepts in the two works but a high-level comparison follows.

4211 The **enterprise viewpoint** and the **information viewpoint** share many aspects in common with the

4212 RAF's SOA Ecosystem view and its associated models and are mainly concerned with: understanding,

4213 defining and modeling organizational context in which a distributed system is to be built and operated;

4214 defines how sets of participants should behave in order to achieve specific objectives; roles played;

4215 processes and interactions involved; enterprise policies (obligations, permissions, prohibitions,

4216 authorizations) that constrain behavior in different roles; and descriptions of behavior expressing
 4217 functionality or capability provided by one party to others who can use the service to satisfy their own

4218 business needs, resulting in an added value to them.

The computational viewpoint maps closely to the RAF Service Model and is concerned with describing
 basic functionality of the processes and applications supporting enterprise activities. They are both
 concerned with interactions at interfaces between and across organizational or ownership boundaries.

4222 The RM-ODP standard also provides a well-defined **conformance framework**, providing links between

4223 specifications and implementations and thus supporting testing and which corresponds to the RAF's Architectural Implementations

4224 Architectural Implications sections.

4225 | The ODP viewpoint languages are defined in an abstract way and can be supported by several notations.

4226 The use of UML notation in expressing ODP viewpoint languages is defined in a separate ISO standard, 4227 Use of UML for ODP system specification ('UML4ODP' for short) **[ISO/IEC IS 19793]**. Comment [PFB75]: Issue #313